



# Specifications

## Extend Communications Duct Bank

North Carolina Air National Guard – 145<sup>th</sup> Airlift Wing  
*Charlotte Air National Guard Base*  
*Charlotte, North Carolina*

### Type B-3 Submittal

March 2022

Contract No. W9133L-15-D-0004  
Delivery Order No.: W50S87-20-F-5014  
Project Number: FJRP182510

This page intentionally left blank.

**PROJECT TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

01 11 00	08/15	SUMMARY OF WORK
01 14 00	11/11	WORK RESTRICTIONS
01 20 00.00 20	11/11	PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES
01 30 00	08/15	ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS
01 33 00	08/18	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
01 35 26	11/15	GOVERNMENTAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS
01 42 00	02/19	SOURCES FOR REFERENCE PUBLICATIONS
01 45 00.10 10	02/10	QUALITY CONTROL FOR MINOR CONSTRUCTION
01 50 00	05/18	TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES AND CONTROLS
01 57 19	11/15	TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS
01 74 19	02/19	CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL
01 78 00	05/19	CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

**DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS**

02 41 00	05/10, CHG 2: 02/19	DEMOLITION
----------	---------------------	------------

**DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE**

03 30 00	02/19	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
----------	-------	------------------------

**DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK**

31 00 00	08/08	EARTHWORK
31 11 00	11/18	CLEARING AND GRUBBING

**DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

32 11 23	08/17	AGGREGATE BASE COURSES
32 12 13	05/17	BITUMINOUS TACK AND PRIME COATS
32 12 16	08/09	HOT-MIX ASPHALT (HMA) FOR ROADS
32 16 19	05/18	CONCRETE CURBS, GUTTERS
32 17 23	08/16, CHG 5: 11/18	PAVEMENT MARKINGS
32 92 19	08/17	SEEDING

**DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES**

33 71 02	02/15	UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION
----------	-------	-------------------------------------

-- End of Project Table of Contents --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 11 00

SUMMARY OF WORK  
08/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals  
Salvage Plan; G

1.2 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

1.2.1 Project Description

This project is to evaluate the existing conditions and provide a new communications ductbank to increase capacity to several facilities to enable mission conversion from C-130 to 8 PAA C-17 mission. The buildings considered are the gatehouses and the necessary interconnects.

1.2.2 BASE PERSONNEL TRAINING

Contractor shall be responsible for training the State Maintenance personnel on each new system and all smart meters installed under this contract.

1.2.3 Location

The work is located at the Charlotte Air National Guard Base (ANGB), North Carolina, approximately as indicated. The exact location will be shown by the Contracting Officer.

1.2.4 Type of Contract

Project shall be Firm Fixed Price (FFP) contract.

1.3 OCCUPANCY OF PREMISES

Building(s) will be occupied during performance of work under this Contract. Occupancy notifications will be posted in a prominent location in the work area.

Before work is started, arrange with the Contracting Officer a sequence of procedure, means of access, space for storage of materials and equipment, and use of approaches, corridors, and stairways.

1.4 SALVAGE MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT

Items designated by the Contracting Officer to be salvaged remain the property of the Government. Segregate, itemize, deliver and off-load the salvaged property at the Government designated storage area.

Provide a [salvage plan](#), listing material and equipment to be salvaged, and their storage location. Maintain property control records for material or equipment designated as salvage. Use a system of property control that is approved by the Contracting Officer. Store and protect salvaged materials and equipment until disposition by the Contracting Officer.

#### 1.5 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

The General Contractor shall be thoroughly familiar with the Drawings and Specifications to ensure against misunderstanding between trades during entire construction of project. If there is a conflict between different contract documents, the contractor shall submit a Request for Information to clarify the discrepancy prior to proceeding and/or installing the item/work. Although every endeavor has been made, on the Drawings and in Specifications to show all new and existing conditions, it will be the Contractor's responsibility to fully and carefully evaluate drawings and job-site conditions prior to submitting the bid proposal. It is not the intent of the Contract to pay the Contractor for work due to deviations from Drawings and Specifications.

#### 1.6 Site Preparation

All site preparation work shall proceed with due care and safety for personnel and pedestrians. All operations shall be planned to cause the minimum amount of interference with normal routine and functioning of existing facilities on the Charlotte ANGB. This project site area(s) within the overall Charlotte ANGB may be located within an 'active construction site' under a separate project(s) (and GC's). The Contractor shall be responsible (material, labor, and all applicable fees), and/or coordinate with all other GC's, to maintain and/or provide all provisions that exist on-site or that are required per the Contract Documents. Contractor shall coordinate with other GC's working within the Charlotte ANGB installation to ensure all separate construction activities, to include but not limited to: site access, staging area(s), etc. (of all separate projects) shall not be interrupted.

#### 1.7 Preservation and Restoration of Property

Contractor shall be responsible for the preservation of all public and private property on the surface or underground, along and adjacent to the work, and shall conduct their operations in a manner that will ensure against injury or damage thereto. In addition to FAR 52.236-9 Protection of Existing Vegetation, Structures, Equipment, Utilities, and Improvements:

- a. Remove or alter existing work in such a manner as to prevent injury or damage to any portions of the existing work which remain.
- b. Repair or replace portions of existing work which have been altered during construction operations to match existing or adjoining work, as approved by the Contracting Officer. At the completion of operations, existing work must be in a condition equal to or better than that which existed before new work started.

Where any direct or indirect damage is done to public or private property by or on account of any act, omission, neglect or misconduct in the execution of the work, or because of non-execution thereof, on the part of the Contractor, such property shall be restored by the Contractor, at no cost to the Government, to a condition equal to that existing before such

damage was done, by repairing, rebuilding or otherwise restoring same in a manner acceptable to the Government.

## 1.8 Progress Meetings

Progress Meetings: The Contractor shall conduct progress meetings at the Project Site at bi-weekly intervals. Intervals may change with the approval of the Contracting Officer. Dates of meetings shall be coordinated with preparation of the payment request.

### 1.8.1 Attendees

In addition to the Contractor's and Contracting Officer's representatives, each subcontractor, supplier, or other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with the Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

### 1.8.2 Agenda

Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to the status of the Project.

#### 1.8.2.1 Contractor's Construction Schedule

Review progress since the last meeting. Determine where each activity is in relation to the Contractor's Construction Schedule, whether on time or ahead or behind schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.

#### 1.8.2.2 Present and Future Needs

Review the present and future needs of each entity present, including but not limited to the following:

- a) Interface requirements.
- b) Time.
- c) Sequences of operations.
- d) Status of submittals.
- e) Deliveries.
- f) Off-site fabrication.
- g) Access.
- h) Site utilization.
- i) Temporary facilities and controls.
- j) Hours of work.
- k) Hazards and risks.
- l) Housekeeping and progress cleaning.
- m) Quality and work standards.
- n) Status of correction of deficient items.
- o) Field observations.
- p) RFIs.
- q) Pending changes.
- r) Change Orders.
- s) Documentation of information for payment requests.
- t) Updating of Record Documents.

### 1.8.3 Reporting

No later than 3 calendar days after each meeting, the Contractor shall distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other concerned parties, including the Contracting Officer. Include a brief summary, in narrative form, of progress since the previous meeting and report.

### 1.8.4 Schedule Updating

The Contractor shall revise the Contractor's Construction Schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. The revised schedule shall be issued concurrently with the report of each meeting.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not used.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

Not used.

-- End of Section --



SECTION 01 14 00

WORK RESTRICTIONS

11/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

List of Contact Personnel

1.2 SPECIAL SCHEDULING REQUIREMENTS

- a. Have materials, equipment, and personnel required to perform the work at the site prior to the commencement of the work.
- b. The buildings where construction will take place will remain in operation during the entire construction period. The Contractor must develop a detailed work schedule that will be reviewed and coordinated weekly with the Contracting Officer's Representative (COR) and conduct their operations so as to cause the least possible interference with the base operations and building users.
- c. Permission to interrupt any Activity roads, railroads, or utility service must be requested in writing a minimum of 15 calendar days prior to the desired date of interruption.

1.3 CONTRACTOR ACCESS AND USE OF PREMISES

1.3.1 Activity Regulations

Ensure that Contractor personnel employed on the Activity become familiar with and obey Activity regulations including safety, fire, traffic and security regulations. Keep within the limits of the work and avenues of ingress and egress. Wear hard hats in designated areas. Do not enter any restricted areas unless required to do so and until cleared for such entry. Mark Contractor equipment for identification.

1.3.1.1 Subcontractors and Personnel Contacts

Provide a list of contact personnel of the Contractor and subcontractors including addresses and telephone numbers for use in the event of an emergency. As changes occur and additional information becomes available, correct and change the information contained in previous lists.

1.3.1.2 No Smoking Policy

Smoking is prohibited within and outside of all buildings on installation, except in designated smoking areas. This applies to existing buildings, buildings under construction and buildings under renovation. Discarding

tobacco materials other than into designated tobacco receptacles is considered littering and is subject to fines. The Contracting Officer will identify designated smoking areas.

#### 1.3.2 Working Hours

Regular working hours for the Contractor will be between 7 a.m. and 4:30 p.m., excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and Government holidays.

#### 1.3.3 Work Outside Regular Hours

Work outside regular working hours requires Contracting Officer approval. Make application 5 calendar days prior to such work to allow arrangements to be made by the Government for inspecting the work in progress, giving the specific dates, hours, location, type of work to be performed, contract number and project title. Based on the justification provided, the Contracting Officer may approve work outside regular hours. During periods of darkness, the different parts of the work must be lighted in a manner approved by the Contracting Officer. Make utility cutovers after normal working hours or on Saturdays, Sundays, and Government holidays unless directed otherwise.

#### 1.3.4 Federal Holidays

No work must be performed:

New Year's Day - 1 January  
Martin Luther King's Birthday - Third Monday of January  
President's Day - Third Monday of February  
Memorial Day - Last Monday of May  
Independence Day - 4 July  
Labor Day - First Monday in September  
Columbus Day - Second Monday in October  
Veteran's Day - 11 November  
Thanksgiving Day - Fourth Thursday in November  
Christmas Day - 25 December

#### 1.3.5 Occupied Buildings

The Contractor shall be working in and around existing buildings which are occupied. Do not enter the buildings without prior approval of the Contracting Officer.

The existing buildings and their contents must be kept secure at all times. Provide temporary closures as required to maintain security as directed by the Contracting Officer.

The Government and COR will identify sensitive equipment and property that the Government will be responsible for safeguarding. The Contractor will coordinate with the COR on Contractor's relocation and/or removal of any equipment that are in the areas of the buildings scheduled to receive work.

#### 1.4 SECURITY REQUIREMENTS

The Contractor shall comply with all security regulations imposed by the base/post commander and/or agency occupying the space where work is to be performed. Any necessary security clearances shall be obtained prior to commencement of work.

The Contractor employees must wear and display a badge in the chest area at all times while entering, remaining in, and exiting the base buildings. The Contractor will coordinate with the COR on specifics for base badges.

#### 1.5 FOREIGN OBJECT DEBRIS (FOD) REQUIREMENTS

The Contractor shall provide appropriate manpower and FOD detection equipment to prevent foreign object debris from construction activities to impair and harm the operations of aircraft and personnel.

##### 1.5.1 FOD Hazards

FOD can severely injure personnel or damage equipment. Types of potential damage include: cutting aircraft tires; being ingested into engines; or becoming lodged in mechanisms affecting flight operations. Personnel injuries can occur when jet blast propels FOD through the site at high velocities.

##### 1.5.2 Sources of FOD

FOD comes from many sources, which complicates efforts to maintain safe aircraft movement areas. FOD can be generated from construction activities, personnel, facility infrastructure (pavements, lights, and signs), the environment (wildlife, snow, ice) and the equipment operating on the airfield (aircraft, airport operations vehicles, maintenance equipment, fueling trucks, other aircraft servicing equipment, and construction equipment).

##### 1.5.3 Types of FOD

The exact nature of FOD is also varied. FOD can be composed of any material and can be of any color and size. Typical FOD includes the following:

1. Aircraft and engine fasteners (nuts, bolts, washers, safety wire, etc.);
2. Aircraft parts (fuel caps, landing gear fragments, oil sticks, metal sheets, trapdoors, and tire fragments);
3. Mechanics' tools;
4. Catering supplies;
5. Flight line items (nails, personnel badges, pens, pencils, luggage tags, soda cans, etc.);
6. Apron items (paper and plastic debris from catering and freight pallets, luggage parts, and debris from ramp equipment);
7. Runway and taxiway materials (concrete and asphalt chunks, rubber joint materials, and paint chips);
8. Construction debris (pieces of wood, stones, fasteners and miscellaneous metal objects);
9. Plastic and/or polyethylene materials;
10. Natural materials (plant fragments and wildlife); and

11. Contaminants from winter conditions (snow, ice).

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 20 00.00 20

PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES

11/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EP 1110-1-8

(2016) Construction Equipment Ownership  
and Operating Expense Schedule

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Schedule of Prices; G

1.3 SCHEDULE OF PRICES

1.3.1 Real Property Assets

The Government will provide the Draft DD Form 1354, Transfer and Acceptance of Military Real Property filled in with the appropriate Real Property Unique Identifiers (RPUID) and related construction Category Codes to summarize the designed real property assets that apply to this contract. The Contractor shall meet with the Contracting Officer and the Real Property Accounting Officer during the Pre Construction Meeting and the Project Closeout Meetings to modify and include any necessary changes to the DD Form 1354. The Contractor shall provide the Interim DD Form 1354 that uses the appropriate division of the RPUIDs/ Category Codes to represent the final constructed facility and include all associated cost. Coordinate the Contractor's Price and Payment structure with the structure of the RPUIDs/ Category Codes.

Divide detailed asset breakdown into the RPUIDs and related construction Category Codes and populate associated costs which represent all aspects of the work. Where assets diverge into multiple RPUID/ Category Codes, divide the asset and provide the proportion of the assets in each RPUID/ Category Code. Assets and related RPUID/ Category Codes may be modified by the Contracting Officer as necessary during course of the work. Coordinate identification and proportion of these assets with the Government Real Property Accounting Officer.

Cost data accumulated under this section are required in the preparation of DD Form 1354.

#### 1.4 CONTRACT MODIFICATIONS

In conjunction with the Contract Clause DFARS 252.236-7000 Modification Proposals-Price Breakdown, and where actual ownership and operating costs of construction equipment cannot be determined from Contractor accounting records, equipment use rates shall be based upon the applicable provisions of the EP 1110-1-8.

#### 1.5 CONTRACTOR'S INVOICE AND CONTRACT PERFORMANCE STATEMENT

##### 1.5.1 Submission of Invoices

If DFARS Clause 252.232-7006 Wide Area WorkFlow Payment Instructions is included in the contract, provide the documents listed in paragraph CONTENT OF INVOICE in their entirety as attachments in Wide Area Work Flow (WAWF) for each invoice submitted. The maximum size of each WAWF attachment is two megabytes, but there are no limits on the number of attachments. If a document cannot be attached in WAWF due to system or size restriction, provide it as instructed by the Contracting Officer.

##### 1.5.2 Final Invoice

- a. A final invoice shall be accompanied by the certification required by DFARS 252.247.7023 Transportation of Supplies by Sea, and the Contractor's Final Release. If the Contractor is incorporated, the Final Release shall contain the corporate seal. An officer of the corporation shall sign and the corporate secretary shall certify the Final Release.
- b. For final invoices being submitted via WAWF, the original Contractor's Final Release Form and required certification of Transportation of Supplies by Sea must be provided directly to the respective Contracting Officer prior to submission of the final invoice. Once receipt of the original Final Release Form and required certification of Transportation of Supplies by Sea has been confirmed by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall then submit final invoice and attach a copy of the Final Release Form and required certification of Transportation of Supplies by Sea in WAWF.
- c. Final invoices not accompanied by the Contractor's Final Release and required certification of Transportation of Supplies by Sea will be considered incomplete and will be returned to the Contractor.

#### 1.6 PAYMENTS TO THE CONTRACTOR

Payments will be made on submission of itemized requests by the Contractor which comply with the requirements of this section, and will be subject to reduction for overpayments or increase for underpayments made on previous payments to the Contractor.

##### 1.6.1 Obligation of Government Payments

The obligation of the Government to make payments required under the provisions of this contract will, at the discretion of the Contracting Officer, be subject to reductions and suspensions permitted under the FAR and agency regulations including the following in accordance with FAR 32.503-6 Suspension or Reduction of Payments:

- a. Reasonable deductions due to defects in material or workmanship;
- b. Claims which the Government may have against the Contractor under or in connection with this contract;
- c. Unless otherwise adjusted, repayment to the Government upon demand for overpayments made to the Contractor; and
- d. Failure to provide up to date record drawings not current as stated in Contract Clause "FAC 5252.236-9310, Record Drawings."

#### 1.6.2 Payment for Onsite and Offsite Materials

Progress payments may be made to the contractor for materials delivered on the site, for materials stored off construction sites, or materials that are in transit to the construction sites under the following conditions:

- a. FAR 52.232-5(b) Payments Under Fixed Price Construction Contracts.
- b. Materials delivered on the site but not installed, including completed preparatory work, and off-site materials to be considered for progress payment shall be major high cost, long lead, special order, or specialty items, not susceptible to deterioration or physical damage in storage or in transit to the construction site. Examples of materials acceptable for payment consideration include, but are not limited to, structural steel, non-magnetic steel, non-magnetic aggregate, equipment, machinery, large pipe and fittings, precast/prestressed concrete products, plastic lumber (e.g., fender piles/curbs), and high-voltage electrical cable. Materials not acceptable for payment include consumable materials such as nails, fasteners, conduits, gypsum board, glass, insulation, and wall coverings.
- c. Materials to be considered for progress payment prior to installation shall be specifically and separately identified in the Contractor's estimates of work submitted for the Contracting Officer's approval in accordance with Schedule of Prices requirement of this contract. Requests for progress payment consideration for such items shall be supported by documents establishing their value and that the title requirements of the clause at FAR 52.232-5 Payments Under Fixed-Price Construction Contracts have been met.
- d. Materials are adequately insured and protected from theft and exposure.
- e. Provide a written consent from the surety company with each payment request for offsite materials.
- f. Materials to be considered for progress payments prior to installation shall be stored either in Hawaii, Guam, Puerto Rico, or the Continental United States. Other locations are subject to written approval by the Contracting Officer.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

NCANG - Extend Communications Duct Bank  
Type B-3 Submittal

Contract: W9133L-15-D-0004  
Delivery Order No. W50S87-20-F-5014

-- End of Section --



SECTION 01 30 00

ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

08/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1

(2014) Safety and Health Requirements  
Manual

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

View Location Map; G

Progress and Completion Pictures; G

1.3 VIEW LOCATION MAP

Submit, prior to or with the first digital photograph submittals, a sketch or drawing indicating the required photographic locations. Update as required if the locations are moved.

1.4 PROGRESS AND COMPLETION PICTURES

Photographically document site conditions prior to start of construction operations. Include aerial photographs. Provide monthly, and within one month of the completion of work, digital photographs, 1600x1200x24 bit true color minimum resolution in JPEG file format showing the sequence and progress of work. Take a minimum of 20 digital photographs each week throughout the entire project from a minimum of ten views from points located by the Contracting Officer. Submit with the monthly invoice two sets of digital photographs, each set on a separate compact disc (CD) or data versatile disc (DVD), cumulative of all photos to date. Indicate photographs demonstrating environmental procedures. Provide photographs for each month in a separate monthly directory and name each file to indicate its location on the view location sketch. Also provide the view location sketch on the CD or DVD as a digital file. Include a date designator in file names. Cross reference submittals in the appropriate daily report. Photographs provided are for unrestricted use by the Government.

## 1.5 MINIMUM INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS

Provide the minimum insurance coverage required by FAR 28.307-2 Liability, during the entire period of performance under this contract. Provide other insurance coverage as required by State law.

## 1.6 SUPERVISION

### 1.6.1 Minimum Communication Requirements

Have at least one qualified superintendent, or competent alternate, capable of reading, writing, and conversing fluently in the English language, on the job-site at all times during the performance of contract work. In addition, if a Quality Control (QC) representative is required on the contract, then that individual must also have fluent English communication skills.

### 1.6.2 Superintendent Qualifications

The project superintendent must have a minimum of 10 years experience in construction with at least 5 of those years as a superintendent on projects similar in size and complexity. The individual must be familiar with the requirements of EM 385-1-1 and have experience in the areas of hazard identification and safety compliance. The individual must be capable of interpreting a critical path schedule and construction drawings. The qualification requirements for the alternate superintendent are the same as for the project superintendent. The Contracting Officer may request proof of the superintendent's qualifications at any point in the project if the performance of the superintendent is in question.

For routine projects where the superintendent is permitted to also serve as the Quality Control (QC) Manager as established in Section 01 45 00.10 10 QUALITY CONTROL, the superintendent must have qualifications in accordance with that section.

#### 1.6.2.1 Duties

The project superintendent is primarily responsible for managing and coordinating day-to-day production and schedule adherence on the project. The superintendent is required to attend partnering meetings, and quality control meetings. The superintendent or qualified alternative must be on-site at all times during the performance of this contract until the work is completed and accepted.

### 1.6.3 Project Manager

Assign a Project Manager with the responsibility for the overall management of the project. The Contracting Officer may request proof of the Project Manager's qualifications at any point in the project if the performance of the Project Manager is in question.

#### 1.6.3.1 Project Manager Qualifications

The Project Manager must have a minimum 10 years experience as a Project Manager or Superintendent on projects of similar size and complexity.

#### 1.6.4 Non-Compliance Actions

The Project Superintendent is subject to removal by the Contracting Officer

for non-compliance with requirements specified in the contract and for failure to manage the project to insure timely completion. Furthermore, the Contracting Officer may issue an order stopping all or part of the work until satisfactory corrective action has been taken. No part of the time lost due to such stop orders is acceptable as the subject of claim for extension of time for excess costs or damages by the Contractor.

#### 1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING CONFERENCE

After award of the contract but prior to commencement of any work at the site, meet with the Contracting Officer to discuss and develop a mutual understanding relative to the administration of the value engineering and safety program, preparation of the schedule of prices or earned value report, shop drawings, and other submittals, scheduling programming, prosecution of the work, and clear expectations of the "Interim DD Form 1354" Submittal. Major subcontractors who will engage in the work must also attend.

#### 1.8 WAIVER FOR WORKER'S COMPENSATION

In addition to FAR 52.228-4 Workers' Compensation and War-Hazard Insurance Overseas, the Secretary of Labor has granted a waiver. The waiver does not apply to employees who are hired in the United States, or who are residents, or citizens of the United States.

#### 1.9 PARTNERING

To most effectively accomplish this contract, the Government requires the formation of a cohesive partnership within the Project Team whose members are from the Government, the Contractor and their Subcontractors. Key personnel from the Supported Command, the End User (who will occupy the facility), the Government Design and Construction team and Subject Matter Experts, the Installation, the Contractor and Subcontractors, and the Designer of Record will be invited to participate in the Partnering process. The Partnership will draw on the strength of each organization in an effort to achieve a project that is without any safety mishaps, conforms to the Contract, and stays within budget and on schedule.

The Contracting Officer will provide Information on the Partnering Process and a list of key and optional personnel who should attend the Partnering meeting.

##### 1.9.1 Informal Partnering

The Contracting Officer will organize the Partnering Sessions with key personnel of the project team, including Contractor personnel and Government personnel.

The Initial Partnering session should be a part of the Pre-Construction Meeting. Partnering sessions will be held at a location agreed to by the Contracting Officer and the Contractor (typically a conference room provided by the PWD FEAD/ROICC PWD FEAD/ROICC Resident Engineer office or the Contractor). The Initial Informal Partnering Session will be conducted and facilitated using electronic media (a video and accompanying forms) provided by the Contracting Officer. The Partners will determine the frequency of the follow-on sessions, at no more than 3 to six month intervals.

1.10 ELECTRONIC MAIL (E-MAIL) ADDRESS

Establish and maintain electronic mail (e-mail) capability along with the capability to open various electronic attachments as text files, pdf files, and other similar formats. Within 10 days after contract award, provide the Contracting Officer a single (only one) e-mail address for electronic communications from the Contracting Officer related to this contract including, but not limited to contract documents, invoice information, request for proposals, and other correspondence. The Contracting Officer may also use email to notify the Contractor of base access conditions when emergency conditions warrant, such as hurricanes or terrorist threats. Multiple email addresses are not allowed.

It is the Contractor's responsibility to make timely distribution of all Contracting Officer initiated e-mail with its own organization including field office(s). Promptly notify the Contracting Officer, in writing, of any changes to this email address.

1.11 MOBILIZATION

Contractor shall mobilize to the jobsite within 60 calendar days of contract award. Mobilize is defined as having equipment AND having a physical presence of at least one person from the contractor's team on the jobsite.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 33 00

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

1.1.1 Submittal Information

The Contracting Officer may request submittals in addition to those specified when deemed necessary to adequately describe the work covered in the respective sections. Each submittal is to be complete and in sufficient detail to allow ready determination of compliance with contract requirements.

Units of weights and measures used on all submittals are to be the same as those used in the contract drawings.

1.1.2 Project Type

The Contractor's Quality Control (CQC) System Manager are to check and approve all items before submittal and stamp, sign, and date indicating action taken. Proposed deviations from the contract requirements are to be clearly identified. Include within submittals items such as: Contractor's, manufacturer's, or fabricator's drawings; descriptive literature including (but not limited to) catalog cuts, diagrams, operating charts or curves; test reports; test cylinders; samples; O&M manuals (including parts list); certifications; warranties; and other such required submittals.

1.1.3 Submission of Submittals

Schedule and provide submittals requiring Government approval before acquiring the material or equipment covered thereby. Pick up and dispose of samples not incorporated into the work in accordance with manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets (SDS) and in compliance with existing laws and regulations.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Submittal Descriptions (SD)

Submittal requirements are specified in the technical sections. Examples and descriptions of submittals identified by the Submittal Description (SD) numbers and titles follow:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Submittals that are required prior to or at the start of construction (work) or the next major phase of the construction on a multiphase contract.

Preconstruction Submittals include schedules and a tabular list of

locations, features, and other pertinent information regarding products, materials, equipment, or components to be used in the work.

Certificates Of Insurance

Surety Bonds

List Of Proposed Subcontractors

List Of Proposed Products

Baseline Network Analysis Schedule (NAS)

Submittal Register

Schedule Of Prices Or Earned Value Report

Accident Prevention Plan

Work Plan

Quality Control (QC) plan

#### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Drawings, diagrams and schedules specifically prepared to illustrate some portion of the work.

Diagrams and instructions from a manufacturer or fabricator for use in producing the product and as aids to the Contractor for integrating the product or system into the project.

Drawings prepared by or for the Contractor to show how multiple systems and interdisciplinary work will be coordinated.

#### SD-03 Product Data

Catalog cuts, illustrations, schedules, diagrams, performance charts, instructions and brochures illustrating size, physical appearance and other characteristics of materials, systems or equipment for some portion of the work.

Samples of warranty language when the contract requires extended product warranties.

#### SD-04 Samples

Fabricated or unfabricated physical examples of materials, equipment or workmanship that illustrate functional and aesthetic characteristics of a material or product and establish standards by which the work can be judged.

Color samples from the manufacturer's standard line (or custom color samples if specified) to be used in selecting or approving colors for the project.

Field samples and mock-ups constructed on the project site establish standards ensuring work can be judged. Includes assemblies or portions of assemblies that are to be incorporated into the project and those

that will be removed at conclusion of the work.

#### SD-05 Design Data

Design calculations, mix designs, analyses or other data pertaining to a part of work.

Design submittals, design substantiation submittals and extensions of design submittals.

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Report signed by authorized official of testing laboratory that a material, product or system identical to the material, product or system to be provided has been tested in accord with specified requirements. Unless specified in another section, testing must have been within three years of date of contract award for the project.

Report that includes findings of a test required to be performed on an actual portion of the work or prototype prepared for the project before shipment to job site.

Report that includes finding of a test made at the job site or on sample taken from the job site, on portion of work during or after installation.

Investigation reports

Daily logs and checklists

Final acceptance test and operational test procedure

#### SD-07 Certificates

Statements printed on the manufacturer's letterhead and signed by responsible officials of manufacturer of product, system or material attesting that the product, system, or material meets specification requirements. Must be dated after award of project contract and clearly name the project.

Document required of Contractor, or of a manufacturer, supplier, installer or Subcontractor through Contractor. The document purpose is to further promote the orderly progression of a portion of the work by documenting procedures, acceptability of methods, or personnel qualifications.

Confined space entry permits

Text of posted operating instructions

#### SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Preprinted material describing installation of a product, system or material, including special notices and (SDS) concerning impedances, hazards and safety precautions.

#### SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Documentation to record compliance with technical or administrative

requirements or to establish an administrative mechanism.

Submittals required for Guiding Principle Validation (GPV) or Third Party Certification (TPC).

Special requirements necessary to properly close out a construction contract. For example, Record Drawings and as-built drawings. Also, submittal requirements necessary to properly close out a major phase of construction on a multi-phase contract.

#### 1.2.2 Approving Authority

Office or designated person authorized to approve the submittal.

#### 1.2.3 Work

As used in this section, on-site and off-site construction required by contract documents, including labor necessary to produce submittals, construction, materials, products, equipment, and systems incorporated or to be incorporated in such construction. In exception, excludes work to produce SD-01 submittals.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with this section.

#### SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

##### Submittal Register; G

### 1.4 SUBMITTAL CLASSIFICATION

#### 1.4.1 Government Approved (G)

Government approval is required for extensions of design, critical materials, variations, equipment whose compatibility with the entire system must be checked, and other items as designated by the Government.

Government approval is required for any variations from the Solicitation or the Accepted Proposal and for other items as designated by the Government.

Within the terms of the Contract Clause SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS FOR CONSTRUCTION, submittals are considered to be "shop drawings."

### 1.5 PREPARATION

#### 1.5.1 Transmittal Form

Use the ENG Form 4025-R transmittal form for submitting both Government-approved and information-only submittals. Submit in accordance with the instructions on the reverse side of the form. These forms will be furnished to the Contractor. Properly complete this form by filling out all the heading blank spaces and identifying each item submitted. Exercise special care to ensure proper listing of the specification paragraph and sheet number of the contract drawings pertinent to the data submitted for



each item.

#### 1.5.2 Submittal Format

##### 1.5.2.1 Format of SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

When the submittal includes a document that is to be used in the project, or is to become part of the project record, other than as a submittal, do not apply the Contractor's approval stamp to the document itself, but to a separate sheet accompanying the document.

Provide data in the unit of measure used in the contract documents.

##### 1.5.2.2 Format for SD-02 Shop Drawings

Provide shop drawings not less than 8 1/2 by 11 inches nor more than 30 by 42 inches, except for full-size patterns or templates. Prepare drawings to accurate size, with scale indicated, unless another form is required. Ensure drawings are suitable for reproduction and of a quality to produce clear, distinct lines and letters, with dark lines on a white background.

- a. Include the nameplate data, size, and capacity on drawings. Also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical society publication references.
- b. Dimension drawings, except diagrams and schematic drawings. Prepare drawings demonstrating interface with other trades to scale. Use the same unit of measure for shop drawings as indicated on the contract drawings. Identify materials and products for work shown.

Present shop drawings sized 8 1/2 by 11 inches as part of the bound volume for submittals. Present larger drawings in sets. Submit an electronic copy of drawings in PDF format.

##### 1.5.2.2.1 Drawing Identification

Include on each drawing the drawing title, number, date, and revision numbers and dates, in addition to information required in paragraph IDENTIFYING SUBMITTALS.

Number drawings in a logical sequence. Each drawing is to bear the number of the submittal in a uniform location next to the title block. Place the Government contract number in the margin, immediately below the title block, for each drawing.

##### 1.5.2.3 Format of SD-03 Product Data

Present product data submittals for each section as a complete, bound volume. Include a table of contents, listing the page and catalog item numbers for product data.

Indicate, by prominent notation, each product that is being submitted; indicate the specification section number and paragraph number to which it pertains.

##### 1.5.2.3.1 Product Information

Supplement product data with material prepared for the project to satisfy the submittal requirements where product data does not exist. Identify

this material as developed specifically for the project, with information and format as required for submission of SD-07 Certificates.

Provide product data in units used in the Contract documents. Where product data are included in preprinted catalogs with another unit, submit the dimensions in contract document units, on a separate sheet.

#### 1.5.2.3.2 Standards

Where equipment or materials are specified to conform to industry or technical-society reference standards of such organizations as the American National Standards Institute (ANSI), ASTM International (ASTM), National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA), Underwriters Laboratories (UL), or Association of Edison Illuminating Companies (AEIC), submit proof of such compliance. The label or listing by the specified organization will be acceptable evidence of compliance. In lieu of the label or listing, submit a certificate from an independent testing organization, competent to perform testing, and approved by the Contracting Officer. State on the certificate that the item has been tested in accordance with the specified organization's test methods and that the item complies with the specified organization's reference standard.

#### 1.5.2.3.3 Data Submission

Collect required data submittals for each specific material, product, unit of work, or system into a single submittal that is marked for choices, options, and portions applicable to the submittal. Mark each copy of the product data identically. Partial submittals will not be accepted for expedition of the construction effort.

Submit the manufacturer's instructions before installation.

#### 1.5.2.4 Format of SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Present manufacturer's instructions submittals for each section [as a complete, bound volume](#). Include the manufacturer's name, trade name, place of manufacture, and catalog model or number on product data. Also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical-society publication references. If supplemental information is needed to clarify the manufacturer's data, submit it as specified for SD-07 Certificates.

Submit the manufacturer's instructions before installation.

#### 1.5.2.4.1 Standards

Where equipment or materials are specified to conform to industry or technical-society reference standards of such organizations as the American National Standards Institute (ANSI), ASTM International (ASTM), National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA), Underwriters Laboratories (UL), or Association of Edison Illuminating Companies (AEIC), submit proof of such compliance. The label or listing by the specified organization will be acceptable evidence of compliance. In lieu of the label or listing, submit a certificate from an independent testing organization, competent to perform testing, and approved by the Contracting Officer. State on the certificate that the item has been tested in accordance with the specified organization's test methods and that the item complies with the specified organization's reference standard.

1.5.2.5 Format of SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Provide reports on 8 1/2 by 11 inch paper in a complete bound volume.

By prominent notation, indicate each report in the submittal. Indicate the specification number and paragraph number to which each report pertains.

1.5.2.6 Format of SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data (O&M)

Comply with the requirements specified in Section 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS for O&M Data format.

1.5.2.7 Format of SD-11 Closeout Submittals

When the submittal includes a document that is to be used in the project or is to become part of the project record, other than as a submittal, do not apply the Contractor's approval stamp to the document itself, but to a separate sheet accompanying the document.

Provide data in the unit of measure used in the contract documents.

1.5.3 Source Drawings for Shop Drawings

1.5.3.1 Source Drawings

The entire set of source drawing files (DWG) will not be provided to the Contractor. Request the specific Drawing Number for the preparation of shop drawings. Only those drawings requested to prepare shop drawings will be provided. These drawings are provided only after award.

1.5.3.2 Terms and Conditions

Data contained on these electronic files must not be used for any purpose other than as a convenience in the preparation of construction data for the referenced project. Any other use or reuse is at the sole risk of the Contractor and without liability or legal exposure to the Government. The Contractor must make no claim, and waives to the fullest extent permitted by law any claim or cause of action of any nature against the Government, its agents, or its subconsultants that may arise out of or in connection with the use of these electronic files. The Contractor must, to the fullest extent permitted by law, indemnify and hold the Government harmless against all damages, liabilities, or costs, including reasonable attorney's fees and defense costs, arising out of or resulting from the use of these electronic files.

These electronic source drawing files are not construction documents. Differences may exist between the source drawing files and the corresponding construction documents. The Government makes no representation regarding the accuracy or completeness of the electronic source drawing files, nor does it make representation to the compatibility of these files with the Contractor hardware or software. The Contractor is responsible for determining if any conflict exists. In the event that a conflict arises between the signed and sealed construction documents prepared by the Government and the furnished source drawing files, the signed and sealed construction documents govern. Use of these source drawing files does not relieve the Contractor of the duty to fully comply with the contract documents, including and without limitation the need to check, confirm and coordinate the work of all contractors for the project. If the Contractor uses, duplicates or modifies these electronic source

drawing files for use in producing construction data related to this contract, remove all previous indication of ownership (seals, logos, signatures, initials and dates).

#### 1.5.4 Electronic File Format

Provide submittals in electronic format, with the exception of material samples required for SD-04 Samples items. In addition to the electronic submittal, provide three hard copies of the submittals. Compile the submittal file as a single, complete document, to include the Transmittal Form described within. Name the electronic submittal file specifically according to its contents, and coordinate the file naming convention with the Contracting Officer. Electronic files must be of sufficient quality that all information is legible. Use PDF as the electronic format, unless otherwise specified or directed by the Contracting Officer. Generate PDF files from original documents with bookmarks so that the text included in the PDF file is searchable and can be copied. If documents are scanned, optical character resolution (OCR) routines are required. Index and bookmark files exceeding 30 pages to allow efficient navigation of the file. When required, the electronic file must include a valid electronic signature or a scan of a signature.

E-mail electronic submittal documents smaller than 10MB to an e-mail address as directed by the Contracting Officer. Provide electronic documents over 10 MB on an optical disc or through an electronic file sharing system such as the AMRDEC SAFE Web Application located at the following website: <https://safe.amrdec.army.mil/safe/>.

#### 1.6 QUANTITY OF SUBMITTALS

##### 1.6.1 Number of SD-01 Preconstruction Submittal Copies

Unless otherwise specified, submit three sets of administrative submittals.

##### 1.6.2 Number of SD-02 Shop Drawing Copies

Submit six copies of submittals of shop drawings requiring review and approval by a QC organization. Submit seven copies of shop drawings requiring review and approval by the Contracting Officer.

##### 1.6.3 Number of SD-03 Product Data Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity requirements specified for shop drawings.

##### 1.6.4 Number of SD-04 Samples

- a. Submit two samples, or two sets of samples showing the range of variation, of each required item. One approved sample or set of samples will be retained by the approving authority and one will be returned to the Contractor.
- b. Submit one sample panel or provide one sample installation where directed. Include components listed in the technical section or as directed.
- c. Submit one sample installation, where directed.
- d. Submit one sample of nonsolid materials.

#### 1.6.5 Number of SD-05 Design Data Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity requirements specified for shop drawings.

#### 1.6.6 Number of SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity requirements specified for shop drawings.

#### 1.6.7 Number of SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Report Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity and quality requirements specified for shop drawings other than field test results that will be submitted with QC reports.

#### 1.6.8 Number of SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data Copies

Submit three copies of O&M data to the Contracting Officer for review and approval.

#### 1.6.9 Number of SD-11 Closeout Submittals Copies

Unless otherwise specified, submit three sets of administrative submittals.

### 1.7 INFORMATION ONLY SUBMITTALS

Submittals without a "G" designation must be certified by the QC manager and submitted to the Contracting Officer for information-only. Approval of the Contracting Officer is not required on information only submittals. The Contracting Officer will mark "receipt acknowledged" on submittals for information and will return only the transmittal cover sheet to the Contractor. Normally, submittals for information only will not be returned. However, the Government reserves the right to return unsatisfactory submittals and require the Contractor to resubmit any item found not to comply with the contract. This does not relieve the Contractor from the obligation to furnish material conforming to the plans and specifications; will not prevent the Contracting Officer from requiring removal and replacement of nonconforming material incorporated in the work; and does not relieve the Contractor of the requirement to furnish samples for testing by the Government laboratory or for check testing by the Government in those instances where the technical specifications so prescribe.

### 1.8 PROJECT SUBMITTAL REGISTER

A sample Project Submittal Register showing items of equipment and materials for when submittals are required by the specifications is provided as "Appendix A - Submittal Register."

#### 1.8.1 Submittal Management

Prepare and maintain a submittal register, as the work progresses. Do not change data that is output in columns (c), (d), (e), and (f) as delivered by Government; retain data that is output in columns (a), (g), (h), and (i) as approved. As an attachment, provide a submittal register showing items of equipment and materials for which submittals are required by the specifications. This list may not be all-inclusive and additional submittals may be required.

Column (c): Lists specification section in which submittal is

required.

Column (d): Lists each submittal description (SD Number. and type, e.g., SD-02 Shop Drawings) required in each specification section.

Column (e): Lists one principal paragraph in each specification section where a material or product is specified. This listing is only to facilitate locating submitted requirements. Do not consider entries in column (e) as limiting the project requirements.

#### 1.8.2 Preconstruction Use of Submittal Register

Submit the submittal register. Include the QC plan and the project schedule. Verify that all submittals required for the project are listed and add missing submittals. Coordinate and complete the following fields on the register submitted with the QC plan and the project schedule:

Column (a) Activity Number: Activity number from the project schedule.

Column (g) Contractor Submit Date: Scheduled date for the approving authority to receive submittals.

Column (h) Contractor Approval Date: Date that Contractor needs approval of submittal.

Column (i) Contractor Material: Date that Contractor needs material delivered to Contractor control.

#### 1.8.3 Contractor Use of Submittal Register

Update the following fields [in the Government-furnished submittal register program or equivalent fields in the program used by the Contractor](#) with each submittal throughout the contract.

Column (b) Transmittal Number: List of consecutive, Contractor-assigned numbers.

Column (j) Action Code (k): Date of action used to record Contractor's review when forwarding submittals to QC.

Column (l) Date submittal transmitted.

Column (q) Date approval was received.

#### 1.8.4 Approving Authority Use of Submittal Register

Update the following fields:

Column (b) Transmittal Number: List of consecutive, Contractor-assigned numbers.

Column (l) Date submittal was received.

Column (m) through (p) Dates of review actions.

Column (q) Date of return to Contractor.

#### 1.8.5 Action Codes

#### 1.8.6 Delivery of Copies

Submit an updated electronic copy of the submittal register to the Contracting Officer with each invoice request. Provide an updated Submittal Register monthly regardless of whether an invoice is submitted.

### 1.9 VARIATIONS

Variations from contract requirements require Contracting Officer approval pursuant to contract Clause FAR 52.236-21 Specifications and Drawings for Construction, and will be considered where advantageous to the Government.

#### 1.9.1 Considering Variations

Discussion of variations with the Contracting Officer before submission will help ensure that functional and quality requirements are met and minimize rejections and resubmittals. When contemplating a variation that results in lower cost, consider submission of the variation as a Value Engineering Change Proposal (VECP).

Specifically point out variations from contract requirements in transmittal letters. Failure to point out variations may cause the Government to require rejection and removal of such work at no additional cost to the Government.

#### 1.9.2 Proposing Variations

When proposing variation, deliver a written request to the Contracting Officer, with documentation of the nature and features of the variation and why the variation is desirable and beneficial to Government. Include the DOR's written analysis and approval. If lower cost is a benefit, also include an estimate of the cost savings. In addition to documentation required for variation, include the submittals required for the item. Clearly mark the proposed variation in all documentation.

#### 1.9.3 Warranting that Variations are Compatible

When delivering a variation for approval, the Contractor warrants that this contract has been reviewed to establish that the variation, if incorporated, will be compatible with other elements of work.

#### 1.9.4 Review Schedule Extension

In addition to the normal submittal review period, a period of 14 **calendar** days will be allowed for the Government to consider submittals with variations.

### 1.10 SCHEDULING

Schedule and submit concurrently product data and shop drawings covering component items forming a system or items that are interrelated. Submit pertinent certifications at the same time. No delay damages or time extensions will be allowed for time lost in late submittals. Allow an additional 7 **calendar** days for review and approval of submittals for refrigeration and HVAC control systems.

- a. Coordinate scheduling, sequencing, preparing, and processing of submittals with performance of work so that work will not be delayed by submittal processing. The Contractor is responsible for additional time required for Government reviews resulting from required resubmittals. The review period for each resubmittal is the same as for the initial submittal.
- b. Submittals required by the contract documents are listed on the submittal register. If a submittal is listed in the submittal register but does not pertain to the contract work, the Contractor is to include the submittal in the register and annotate it "N/A" with a brief explanation. Approval by the Contracting Officer does not relieve the Contractor of supplying submittals required by the contract documents but that have been omitted from the register or marked "N/A."
- c. Resubmit the submittal register and annotate it monthly with actual submission and approval dates. When all items on the register have been fully approved, no further resubmittal is required.

#### 1.10.1 Government Reviewed Design

The Government will review design submittals for conformance with the technical requirements of the Solicitation. Government review is required for variations from the completed design. Review will be only for conformance with the contract requirements. Included are only those construction submittals for which the DOR's design documents do not include enough detail to ascertain contract compliance. The Government may, but is not required to, review extensions of design such as structural steel or reinforcement shop drawings.

#### 1.11 GOVERNMENT APPROVING AUTHORITY

When the approving authority is the Contracting Officer, the Government will:

- a. Note the date on which the submittal was received.
- b. Review submittals for approval within the scheduling period specified and only for conformance with project design concepts and compliance with contract documents.
- c. Identify returned submittals with one of the actions defined in paragraph REVIEW NOTATIONS and with comments and markings appropriate for the action indicated.

Upon completion of review of submittals requiring Government approval, stamp and date submittals. Two copies of the submittal will be retained by the Contracting Officer and two copies of the submittal will be returned to the Contractor. If the Government performs a conformance review of other Designer of Record approved submittals, the submittals will be identified and returned, as described above.

##### 1.11.1 Review Notations

Submittals will be returned to the Contractor with the following notations:

- a. Submittals marked "approved" or "accepted" authorize proceeding with the work covered.



- b. Submittals marked "approved as noted" or "approved, except as noted, resubmittal not required," authorize proceeding with the work covered provided that the Contractor takes no exception to the corrections.
- c. Submittals marked "not approved," "disapproved," or "revise and resubmit" indicate incomplete submittal or noncompliance with the contract requirements or design concept. Resubmit with appropriate changes. Do not proceed with work for this item until the resubmittal is approved.
- d. Submittals marked "not reviewed" indicate that the submittal has been previously reviewed and approved, is not required, does not have evidence of being reviewed and approved by Contractor, or is not complete. A submittal marked "not reviewed" will be returned with an explanation of the reason it is not reviewed. Resubmit submittals returned for lack of review by Contractor or for being incomplete, with appropriate action, coordination, or change.
- e. Submittals marked "receipt acknowledged" indicate that submittals have been received by the Government. This applies only to "information-only submittals" as previously defined.

#### 1.12 DISAPPROVED SUBMITTALS

Make corrections required by the Contracting Officer. If the Contractor considers any correction or notation on the returned submittals to constitute a change to the contract drawings or specifications, give notice to the Contracting Officer as required under the FAR clause titled CHANGES. The Contractor is responsible for the dimensions and design of connection details and the construction of work. Failure to point out variations may cause the Government to require rejection and removal of such work at the Contractor's expense.

If changes are necessary to submittals, make such revisions and resubmit in accordance with the procedures above. No item of work requiring a submittal change is to be accomplished until the changed submittals are approved.

#### 1.13 APPROVED SUBMITTALS

The Contracting Officer's approval of submittals is not to be construed as a complete check, and indicates only that the general method of construction, materials, detailing, and other information are satisfactory. the design, general method of construction, materials, detailing, and other information appear to meet the Solicitation and Accepted Proposal.

Approval or acceptance by the Government for a submittal does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for meeting the contract requirements or for any error that may exist, because under the Quality Control (QC) requirements of this contract, the Contractor is responsible for ensuring information contained within each submittal accurately conforms with the requirements of the contract documents.

After submittals have been approved or accepted by the Contracting Officer, no resubmittal for the purpose of substituting materials or equipment will be considered unless accompanied by an explanation of why a substitution is necessary.

#### 1.14 APPROVED SAMPLES

Approval of a sample is only for the characteristics or use named in such approval and is not be construed to change or modify any contract requirements. Before submitting samples, provide assurance that the materials or equipment will be available in quantities required in the project. No change or substitution will be permitted after a sample has been approved.

Match the approved samples for materials and equipment incorporated in the work. If requested, approved samples, including those that may be damaged in testing, will be returned to the Contractor, at its expense, upon completion of the contract. Unapproved samples will also be returned to the Contractor at its expense, if so requested.

Failure of any materials to pass the specified tests will be sufficient cause for refusal to consider, under this contract, any further samples of the same brand or make as that material. The Government reserves the right to disapprove any material or equipment that has previously proved unsatisfactory in service.

Samples of various materials or equipment delivered on the site or in place may be taken by the Contracting Officer for testing. Samples failing to meet contract requirements will automatically void previous approvals. Replace such materials or equipment to meet contract requirements.

#### 1.15 WITHHOLDING OF PAYMENT

Payment for materials incorporated in the work will not be made if required approvals have not been obtained. No payment for materials incorporated in the work will be made unless all required DOR approvals or required Government approvals have been obtained. No payment will be made for any materials incorporated into the work for any conformance review submittals or information-only submittals found to contain errors or deviations from the Solicitation or Accepted Proposal.

#### 1.16 STAMPS

Certify the submittal data as follows on Form ENG 4025: "I certify that the above submitted items had been reviewed in detail and are correct and in strict conformance with the contract drawings and specifications except as otherwise stated.

\_\_\_\_NAME OF CONTRACTOR \_\_\_\_\_ SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 35 26

GOVERNMENTAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

11/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY PROFESSIONALS (ASSP)

ASSP A10.34	(2001; R 2012) Protection of the Public on or Adjacent to Construction Sites
ASSP Z359.0	(2012) Definitions and Nomenclature Used for Fall Protection and Fall Arrest
ASSP Z359.1	(2016) The Fall Protection Code
ASSP Z359.11	(2014) Safety Requirements for Full Body Harnesses
ASSP Z359.12	(2009) Connecting Components for Personal Fall Arrest Systems
ASSP Z359.13	(2013) Personal Energy Absorbers and Energy Absorbing Lanyards
ASSP Z359.14	(2014) Safety Requirements for Self-Retracting Devices for Personal Fall Arrest and Rescue Systems
ASSP Z359.15	(2014) Safety Requirements for Single Anchor Lifelines and Fall Arresters for Personal Fall Arrest Systems
ASSP Z359.2	(2017) Minimum Requirements for a Comprehensive Managed Fall Protection Program
ASSP Z359.3	(2017) Safety Requirements for Lanyards and Positioning Lanyards
ASSP Z359.4	(2013) Safety Requirements for Assisted-Rescue and Self-Rescue Systems, Subsystems and Components
ASSP Z359.6	(2016) Specifications and Design Requirements for Active Fall Protection Systems
ASSP Z359.7	(2011) Qualification and Verification Testing of Fall Protection Products

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B30.20	(2013; INT Oct 2010 - May 2012) Below-the-Hook Lifting Devices
ASME B30.22	(2016) Articulating Boom Cranes
ASME B30.26	(2015; INT Jun 2010 - Jun 2014) Rigging Hardware
ASME B30.3	(2016) Tower Cranes
ASME B30.5	(2014) Mobile and Locomotive Cranes
ASME B30.8	(2015) Floating Cranes and Floating Derricks
ASME B30.9	(2014; INT Feb 2011 - Nov 2013) Slings

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 10	(2018; TIA 18-1) Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers
NFPA 241	(2013; Errata 2015) Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations
NFPA 70	(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4) National Electrical Code
NFPA 70E	(2018; TIA 18-1; TIA 81-2) Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1	(2014) Safety and Health Requirements Manual
------------	---

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910	Occupational Safety and Health Standards
29 CFR 1915	Confined and Enclosed Spaces and Other Dangerous Atmospheres in Shipyard Employment
29 CFR 1926	Safety and Health Regulations for Construction
29 CFR 1926.1400	Cranes and Derricks in Construction
29 CFR 1926.450	Scaffolds
29 CFR 1926.500	Fall Protection
CPL 2.100	(1995) Application of the Permit-Required Confined Spaces (PRCS) Standards, 29 CFR

1910.146

## 1.2 DEFINITIONS

### 1.2.1 Competent Person (CP)

The CP is a person designated in writing, who, through training, knowledge and experience, is capable of identifying, evaluating, and addressing existing and predictable hazards in the working environment or working conditions that are dangerous to personnel, and who has authorization to take prompt corrective measures with regards to such hazards.

### 1.2.2 Competent Person, Confined Space

The CP, Confined Space, is a person meeting the competent person requirements as defined EM 385-1-1 Appendix Q, with thorough knowledge of OSHA's Confined Space Standard, 29 CFR 1910.146, and designated in writing to be responsible for the immediate supervision, implementation and monitoring of the confined space program, who through training, knowledge and experience in confined space entry is capable of identifying, evaluating and addressing existing and potential confined space hazards and, who has the authority to take prompt corrective measures with regard to such hazards.

### 1.2.3 Competent Person, Cranes and Rigging

The CP, Cranes and Rigging, as defined in EM 385-1-1 Appendix Q, is a person meeting the competent person, who has been designated in writing to be responsible for the immediate supervision, implementation and monitoring of the Crane and Rigging Program, who through training, knowledge and experience in crane and rigging is capable of identifying, evaluating and addressing existing and potential hazards and, who has the authority to take prompt corrective measures with regard to such hazards.

### 1.2.4 Competent Person, Excavation/Trenching

A CP, Excavation/Trenching, is a person meeting the competent person requirements as defined in EM 385-1-1 Appendix Q and 29 CFR 1926, who has been designated in writing to be responsible for the immediate supervision, implementation and monitoring of the excavation/trenching program, who through training, knowledge and experience in excavation/trenching is capable of identifying, evaluating and addressing existing and potential hazards and, who has the authority to take prompt corrective measures with regard to such hazards.

### 1.2.5 Competent Person, Fall Protection

The CP, Fall Protection, is a person meeting the competent person requirements as defined in EM 385-1-1 Appendix Q and in accordance with ASSP Z359.0, who has been designated in writing by the employer to be responsible for immediate supervising, implementing and monitoring of the fall protection program, who through training, knowledge and experience in fall protection and rescue systems and equipment, is capable of identifying, evaluating and addressing existing and potential fall hazards and, who has the authority to take prompt corrective measures with regard to such hazards.

#### 1.2.6 Competent Person, Scaffolding

The CP, Scaffolding is a person meeting the competent person requirements in EM 385-1-1 Appendix Q, and designated in writing by the employer to be responsible for immediate supervising, implementing and monitoring of the scaffolding program. The CP for Scaffolding has enough training, knowledge and experience in scaffolding to correctly identify, evaluate and address existing and potential hazards and also has the authority to take prompt corrective measures with regard to these hazards. CP qualifications must be documented and include experience on the specific scaffolding systems/types being used, assessment of the base material that the scaffold will be erected upon, load calculations for materials and personnel, and erection and dismantling. The CP for scaffolding must have a documented, minimum of 8-hours of scaffold training to include training on the specific type of scaffold being used (e.g. mast-climbing, adjustable, tubular frame), in accordance with EM 385-1-1 Section 22.B.02.

#### 1.2.7 Competent Person (CP) Trainer

A competent person trainer as defined in EM 385-1-1 Appendix Q, who is qualified in the material presented, and who possesses a working knowledge of applicable technical regulations, standards, equipment and systems related to the subject matter on which they are training Competent Persons. A competent person trainer must be familiar with the typical hazards and the equipment used in the industry they are instructing. The training provided by the competent person trainer must be appropriate to that specific industry. The competent person trainer must evaluate the knowledge and skills of the competent persons as part of the training process.

#### 1.2.8 High Risk Activities

High Risk Activities are activities that involve work at heights, crane and rigging, excavations and trenching, scaffolding, electrical work, and confined space entry.

#### 1.2.9 High Visibility Accident

A High Visibility Accident is any mishap which may generate publicity or high visibility.

#### 1.2.10 Load Handling Equipment (LHE)

LHE is a term used to describe cranes, hoists and all other hoisting equipment (hoisting equipment means equipment, including crane, derricks, hoists and power operated equipment used with rigging to raise, lower or horizontally move a load).

#### 1.2.11 Medical Treatment

Medical Treatment is treatment administered by a physician or by registered professional personnel under the standing orders of a physician. Medical treatment does not include first aid treatment even when provided by a physician or registered personnel.

#### 1.2.12 Near Miss

A Near Miss is a mishap resulting in no personal injury and zero property damage, but given a shift in time or position, damage or injury may have

occurred (e.g., a worker falls off a scaffold and is not injured; a crane swings around to move the load and narrowly misses a parked vehicle).

#### 1.2.13 Operating Envelope

The Operating Envelope is the area surrounding any crane or load handling equipment. Inside this "envelope" is the crane, the operator, riggers and crane walkers, other personnel involved in the operation, rigging gear between the hook, the load, the crane's supporting structure (i.e. ground or rail), the load's rigging path, the lift and rigging procedure.

#### 1.2.14 Qualified Person (QP)

The QP is a person designated in writing, who, by possession of a recognized degree, certificate, or professional standing, or extensive knowledge, training, and experience, has successfully demonstrated their ability to solve or resolve problems related to the subject matter, the work, or the project.

#### 1.2.15 Qualified Person, Fall Protection (QP for FP)

A QP for FP is a person meeting the requirements of [EM 385-1-1](#) Appendix Q, and [ASSP Z359.0](#), with a recognized degree or professional certificate and with extensive knowledge, training and experience in the fall protection and rescue field who is capable of designing, analyzing, and evaluating and specifying fall protection and rescue systems.

#### 1.2.16 Load Handling Equipment (LHE) Accident or Load Handling Equipment Mishap

A LHE accident occurs when any one or more of the eight elements in the operating envelope fails to perform correctly during operation, including operation during maintenance or testing resulting in personnel injury or death; material or equipment damage; dropped load; derailment; two-blocking; overload; or collision, including unplanned contact between the load, crane, or other objects. A dropped load, derailment, two-blocking, overload and collision are considered accidents, even though no material damage or injury occurs. A component failure (e.g., motor burnout, gear tooth failure, bearing failure) is not considered an accident solely due to material or equipment damage unless the component failure results in damage to other components (e.g., dropped boom, dropped load, or roll over).

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section [01 33 00](#) SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

[SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals](#)

[Accident Prevention Plan \(APP\); G](#)

[SD-06 Test Reports](#)

[Monthly Exposure Reports](#)

Notifications and Reports

Accident Reports; G

LHE Inspection Reports

SD-07 Certificates

Crane Operators/Riggers

Standard Lift Plan; G

Critical Lift Plan ; G

Activity Hazard Analysis (AHA)

Confined Space Entry Permit

Hot Work Permit

Certificate of Compliance

1.4 MONTHLY EXPOSURE REPORTS

Provide a Monthly Exposure Report and attach to the monthly billing request. This report is a compilation of employee-hours worked each month for all site workers, both Prime and subcontractor. Failure to submit the report may result in retention of up to 10 percent of the voucher.

1.5 SITE QUALIFICATIONS, DUTIES, AND MEETINGS

1.5.1 Personnel Qualifications

1.5.1.1 Competent Person Qualifications

Provide Competent Persons in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Appendix Q and herein. Competent Persons for high risk activities include confined space, cranes and rigging, excavation/trenching, fall protection, and electrical work. The CP for these activities must be designated in writing, and meet the requirements for the specific activity (i.e. competent person, fall protection).

The Competent Person identified in the Contractor's Safety and Health Program and accepted Accident Prevention Plan, must be on-site at all times when the work that presents the hazards associated with their professional expertise is being performed. Provide the credentials of the Competent Persons(s) to the the Contracting Officer for information in consultation with the Safety Office.

1.5.1.1.1 Competent Person for Confined Space Entry

Provide a Confined Space (CP) Competent Person who meets the requirements of EM 385-1-1, Appendix Q, and herein. The CP for Confined Space Entry must supervise the entry into each confined space in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 34.

1.5.1.1.2 Competent Person for Scaffolding

Provide a Competent Person for Scaffolding who meets the requirements of



EM 385-1-1, Section 22.B.02 and herein.

#### 1.5.1.1.3 Competent Person for Fall Protection

Provide a Competent Person for Fall Protection who meets the requirements of EM 385-1-1, Section 21.C.04, 21.B.03, and herein.

#### 1.5.1.2 Qualified Trainer Requirements

Individuals qualified to instruct the 40 hour contract safety awareness course, or portions thereof, must meet the definition of a Competent Person Trainer, and, at a minimum, possess a working knowledge of the following subject areas: EM 385-1-1, Electrical Standards, Lockout/Tagout, Fall Protection, Confined Space Entry for Construction; Excavation, Trenching and Soil Mechanics, and Scaffolds in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.450, Subpart L.

Instructors are required to:

- a. Prepare class presentations that cover construction-related safety requirements.
- b. Ensure that all attendees attend all sessions by using a class roster signed daily by each attendee. Maintain copies of the roster for at least five (5) years. This is a certification class and must be attended 100 percent. In cases of emergency where an attendee cannot make it to a session, the attendee can make it up in another class session for the same subject.
- c. Update training course materials whenever an update of the EM 385-1-1 becomes available.
- d. Provide a written exam of at least 50 questions. Students are required to answer 80 percent correctly to pass.
- e. Request, review and incorporate student feedback into a continuous course improvement program.

#### 1.5.1.3 Crane Operators/Riggers

Provide Operators, Signal Persons, and Riggers meeting the requirements in EM 385-1-1, Section 15.B for Riggers and Section 16.B for Crane Operators and Signal Persons. Provide proof of current qualification.

#### 1.5.2 Personnel Duties

##### 1.5.2.1 Duties of the Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO)

The SSHO must:

- a. Conduct daily safety and health inspections and maintain a written log which includes area/operation inspected, date of inspection, identified hazards, recommended corrective actions, estimated and actual dates of corrections. Attach safety inspection logs to the Contractors' daily production report.
- b. Conduct mishap investigations and complete required accident reports. Report mishaps and near misses.

- c. Use and maintain OSHA's Form 300 to log work-related injuries and illnesses occurring on the project site for Prime Contractors and subcontractors, and make available to the Contracting Officer upon request. Post and maintain the Form 300A on the site Safety Bulletin Board.
- d. Maintain applicable safety reference material on the job site.
- e. Attend the pre-construction conference, pre-work meetings including preparatory meetings, and periodic in-progress meetings.
- f. Review the APP and AHAs for compliance with EM 385-1-1, and approve, sign, implement and enforce them.
- g. Establish a Safety and Occupational Health (SOH) Deficiency Tracking System that lists and monitors outstanding deficiencies until resolution.
- h. Ensure subcontractor compliance with safety and health requirements.
- i. Maintain a list of hazardous chemicals on site and their material Safety Data Sheets (SDS).
- j. Maintain a weekly list of high hazard activities involving energy, equipment, excavation, entry into confined space, and elevation, and be prepared to discuss details during QC Meetings.
- k. Provide and keep a record of site safety orientation and indoctrination for Contractor employees, subcontractor employees, and site visitors.

Superintendent, QC Manager, and SSSH are subject to dismissal if the above duties are not being effectively carried out. If Superintendent, QC Manager, or SSSH are dismissed, project work will be stopped and will not be allowed to resume until a suitable replacement is approved and the above duties are again being effectively carried out.

### 1.5.3 Meetings

#### 1.5.3.1 Preconstruction Conference

- a. Contractor representatives who have a responsibility or significant role in accident prevention on the project must attend the preconstruction conference. This includes the project superintendent, Site Safety and Occupational Health officer, quality control manager, or any other assigned safety and health professionals who participated in the development of the APP (including the Activity Hazard Analyses (AHAs) and special plans, program and procedures associated with it).
- b. Discuss the details of the submitted APP to include incorporated plans, programs, procedures and a listing of anticipated AHAs that will be developed and implemented during the performance of the contract. This list of proposed AHAs will be reviewed at the conference and an agreement will be reached between the Contractor and the Contracting Officer as to which phases will require an analysis. In addition, establish a schedule for the preparation, submittal, and Government review of AHAs to preclude project delays.
- c. Deficiencies in the submitted APP, identified during the Contracting Officer's review, must be corrected, and the APP re-submitted for

review prior to the start of construction. Work is not permitted to begin until an APP is established that is acceptable to the Contracting Officer.

#### 1.5.3.2 Safety Meetings

Conduct safety meetings to review past activities, plan for new or changed operations, review pertinent aspects of appropriate AHA (by trade), establish safe working procedures for anticipated hazards, and provide pertinent Safety and Occupational Health (SOH) training and motivation. Conduct meetings at least once a month for all supervisors on the project location. The SSHO, supervisors, foremen, or CDSOs must conduct meetings at least once a week for the trade workers. Document meeting minutes to include the date, persons in attendance, subjects discussed, and names of individual(s) who conducted the meeting. Maintain documentation on-site and furnish copies to the Contracting Officer on request. Notify the Contracting Officer of all scheduled meetings 7 calendar days in advance.

#### 1.6 ACCIDENT PREVENTION PLAN (APP)

A qualified person must prepare the written site-specific APP. Prepare the APP in accordance with the format and requirements of EM 385-1-1, Appendix A, and as supplemented herein. Cover all paragraph and subparagraph elements in EM 385-1-1, Appendix A. The APP must be job-specific and address any unusual or unique aspects of the project or activity for which it is written. The APP must interface with the Contractor's overall safety and health program referenced in the APP in the applicable APP element, and made site-specific. Describe the methods to evaluate past safety performance of potential subcontractors in the selection process. Also, describe innovative methods used to ensure and monitor safe work practices of subcontractors. The Government considers the Prime Contractor to be the "controlling authority" for all work site safety and health of the subcontractors. Contractors are responsible for informing their subcontractors of the safety provisions under the terms of the contract and the penalties for noncompliance, coordinating the work to prevent one craft from interfering with or creating hazardous working conditions for other crafts, and inspecting subcontractor operations to ensure that accident prevention responsibilities are being carried out. The APP must be signed by an officer of the firm (Prime Contractor senior person), the individual preparing the APP, the on-site superintendent, the designated SSHO, the Contractor Quality Control Manager, and any designated Certified Safety Professional (CSP) or Certified Health Physicist (CIH). The SSHO must provide and maintain the APP and a log of signatures by each subcontractor foreman, attesting that they have read and understand the APP, and make the APP and log available on-site to the Contracting Officer. If English is not the foreman's primary language, the Prime Contractor must provide an interpreter.

Submit the APP to the Contracting Officer 15 calendar days prior to the date of the preconstruction conference for acceptance. Work cannot proceed without an accepted APP. Once reviewed and accepted by the Contracting Officer, the APP and attachments will be enforced as part of the contract. Disregarding the provisions of this contract or the accepted APP is cause for stopping of work, at the discretion of the Contracting Officer, until the matter has been rectified. Continuously review and amend the APP, as necessary, throughout the life of the contract. Changes to the accepted APP must be made with the knowledge and concurrence of the Contracting Officer, project superintendent, SSHO and Quality Control Manager. Incorporate unusual or high-hazard activities not identified in the

original APP as they are discovered. Should any severe hazard exposure (i.e. imminent danger) become evident, stop work in the area, secure the area, and develop a plan to remove the exposure and control the hazard. Notify the Contracting Officer within 24 hours of discovery. Eliminate and remove the hazard. In the interim, take all necessary action to restore and maintain safe working conditions in order to safeguard onsite personnel, visitors, the public (as defined by ASSP A10.34), and the environment.

#### 1.6.1 Names and Qualifications

Provide plans in accordance with the requirements outlined in Appendix A of EM 385-1-1, including the following:

- a. Names and qualifications (resumes including education, training, experience and certifications) of site safety and health personnel designated to perform work on this project to include the designated Site Safety and Health Officer and other competent and qualified personnel to be used. Specify the duties of each position.
- b. Qualifications of competent and of qualified persons. As a minimum, designate and submit qualifications of competent persons for each of the following major areas: excavation; scaffolding; fall protection; hazardous energy; confined space; health hazard recognition, evaluation and control of chemical, physical and biological agents; and personal protective equipment and clothing to include selection, use and maintenance.

#### 1.6.2 Plans

Provide plans in the APP in accordance with the requirements outlined in Appendix A of EM 385-1-1, including the following:

##### 1.6.2.1 Confined Space Entry Plan

Develop a confined or enclosed space entry plan in accordance with EM 385-1-1, applicable OSHA standards 29 CFR 1910, 29 CFR 1915, and 29 CFR 1926, OSHA Directive CPL 2.100, and any other federal, state and local regulatory requirements identified in this contract. Identify the qualified person's name and qualifications, training, and experience. Delineate the qualified person's authority to direct work stoppage in the event of hazardous conditions. Include procedure for rescue by contractor personnel and the coordination with emergency responders. (If there is no confined space work, include a statement that no confined space work exists and none will be created.)

##### 1.6.2.2 Standard Lift Plan (SLP)

Plan lifts to avoid situations where the operator cannot maintain safe control of the lift. Prepare a written SLP in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 16.A.03, using Form 16-2 for every lift or series of lifts (if duty cycle or routine lifts are being performed). The SLP must be developed, reviewed and accepted by all personnel involved in the lift in conjunction with the associated AHA. Signature on the AHA constitutes acceptance of the plan. Maintain the SLP on the LHE for the current lift(s) being made. Maintain historical SLPs for a minimum of 3 months.

#### 1.6.2.3 Critical Lift Plan - Crane or Load Handling Equipment

Provide a Critical Lift Plan as required by EM 385-1-1, Section 16.H.01, using Form 16-3. In addition, Critical Lift Plans are required for the following:

- a. Lifts over 50 percent of the capacity of barge mounted mobile crane's hoist.
- b. When working around energized power lines where the work will get closer than the minimum clearance distance in EM 385-1-1 Table 16-1.
- c. For lifts with anticipated binding conditions.
- d. When erecting cranes.

##### 1.6.2.3.1 Critical Lift Plan Planning and Schedule

Critical lifts require detailed planning and additional or unusual safety precautions. Develop and submit a critical lift plan to the Contracting Officer 30 calendar days prior to critical lift. Comply with load testing requirements in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 16.F.03.

##### 1.6.2.3.2 Lifts of Personnel

In addition to the requirements of EM 385-1-1, Section 16.H.02, for lifts of personnel, demonstrate compliance with the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.1400 and EM 385-1-1, Section 16.T.

##### 1.6.2.4 Multi-Purpose Machines, Material Handling Equipment, and Construction Equipment Lift Plan

Multi-purpose machines, material handling equipment, and construction equipment used to lift loads that are suspended by rigging gear, require proof of authorization from the machine OEM that the machine is capable of making lifts of loads suspended by rigging equipment. Written approval from a qualified registered professional engineer, after a safety analysis is performed, is allowed in lieu of the OEM's approval. Demonstrate that the operator is properly trained and that the equipment is properly configured to make such lifts and is equipped with a load chart.

##### 1.6.2.5 Fall Protection and Prevention (FP&P) Plan

The plan must comply with the requirements of EM 385-1-1, Section 21.D and ASSP Z359.2, be site specific, and address all fall hazards in the work place and during different phases of construction. Address how to protect and prevent workers from falling to lower levels when they are exposed to fall hazards above 6 feet. A competent person or qualified person for fall protection must prepare and sign the plan documentation. Include fall protection and prevention systems, equipment and methods employed for every phase of work, roles and responsibilities, assisted rescue, self-rescue and evacuation procedures, training requirements, and monitoring methods. Review and revise, as necessary, the Fall Protection and Prevention Plan documentation as conditions change, but at a minimum every six months, for lengthy projects, reflecting any changes during the course of construction due to changes in personnel, equipment, systems or work habits. Keep and maintain the accepted Fall Protection and Prevention Plan documentation at the job site for the duration of the project. Include the Fall Protection and Prevention Plan documentation in the Accident Prevention Plan (APP).

## 1.7 ACTIVITY HAZARD ANALYSIS (AHA)

Before beginning each activity, task or Definable Feature of Work (DFOW) involving a type of work presenting hazards not experienced in previous project operations, or where a new work crew or subcontractor is to perform the work, the Contractor(s) performing that work activity must prepare an AHA. AHAs must be developed by the Prime Contractor, subcontractor, or supplier performing the work, and provided for Prime Contractor review and approval before submitting to the Contracting Officer. AHAs must be signed by the SSHO, Superintendent, QC Manager and the subcontractor Foreman performing the work. Format the AHA in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 1 or as directed by the Contracting Officer. Submit the AHA for review at least 15 working days prior to the start of each activity task, or DFOW. The Government reserves the right to require the Contractor to revise and resubmit the AHA if it fails to effectively identify the work sequences, specific anticipated hazards, site conditions, equipment, materials, personnel and the control measures to be implemented.

AHAs must identify competent persons required for phases involving high risk activities, including confined entry, crane and rigging, excavations, trenching, electrical work, fall protection, and scaffolding.

### 1.7.1 AHA Management

Review the AHA list periodically (at least monthly) at the Contractor supervisory safety meeting, and update as necessary when procedures, scheduling, or hazards change. Use the AHA during daily inspections by the SSHO to ensure the implementation and effectiveness of the required safety and health controls for that work activity.

### 1.7.2 AHA Signature Log

Each employee performing work as part of an activity, task or DFOW must review the AHA for that work and sign a signature log specifically maintained for that AHA prior to starting work on that activity. The SSHO must maintain a signature log on site for every AHA. Provide employees whose primary language is other than English, with an interpreter to ensure a clear understanding of the AHA and its contents.

## 1.8 DISPLAY OF SAFETY INFORMATION

### 1.8.1 Safety Bulletin Board

Within one calendar day(s) after commencement of work, erect a safety bulletin board at the job site. Where size, duration, or logistics of project do not facilitate a bulletin board, an alternative method, acceptable to the Contracting Officer, that is accessible and includes all mandatory information for employee and visitor review, may be deemed as meeting the requirement for a bulletin board. Include and maintain information on safety bulletin board as required by EM 385-1-1, Section 01.A.07. Additional items required to be posted include:

- a. Confined space entry permit.
- b. Hot work permit.

#### 1.8.2 Safety and Occupational Health (SOH) Deficiency Tracking System

Establish a SOH deficiency tracking system that lists and monitors the status of SOH deficiencies in chronological order. Use the tracking system to evaluate the effectiveness of the APP. A monthly evaluation of the data must be discussed in the QC or SOH meeting with everyone on the project. The list must be posted on the project bulletin board and updated daily, and provide the following information:

- a. Date deficiency identified;
- b. Description of deficiency;
- c. Name of person responsible for correcting deficiency;
- d. Projected resolution date;
- e. Date actually resolved.

#### 1.9 SITE SAFETY REFERENCE MATERIALS

Maintain safety-related references applicable to the project, including those listed in paragraph REFERENCES. Maintain applicable equipment manufacturer's manuals.

#### 1.10 EMERGENCY MEDICAL TREATMENT

Contractors must arrange for their own emergency medical treatment in accordance with [EM 385-1-1](#). Government has no responsibility to provide emergency medical treatment.

#### 1.11 NOTIFICATIONS and REPORTS

##### 1.11.1 Mishap Notification

Notify the Contracting Officer as soon as practical, but no more than twenty-four hours, after any mishaps, including recordable accidents, incidents, and near misses, as defined in [EM 385-1-1](#) Appendix Q, any report of injury, illness, or any property damage. For LHE or rigging mishaps, notify the Contracting Officer as soon as practical but not more than 4 hours after mishap. The Contractor is responsible for obtaining appropriate medical and emergency assistance and for notifying fire, law enforcement, and regulatory agencies. Immediate reporting is required for electrical mishaps, to include Arc Flash; shock; uncontrolled release of hazardous energy (includes electrical and non-electrical); load handling equipment or rigging; fall from height (any level other than same surface); and underwater diving. These mishaps must be investigated in depth to identify all causes and to recommend hazard control measures.

Within notification include Contractor name; contract title; type of contract; name of activity, installation or location where accident occurred; date and time of accident; names of personnel injured; extent of property damage, if any; extent of injury, if known, and brief description of accident (for example, type of construction equipment used and PPE used). Preserve the conditions and evidence on the accident site until the Government investigation team arrives on-site and Government investigation is conducted. Assist and cooperate fully with the Government's investigation(s) of any mishap.

#### 1.11.2 Accident Reports

- a. Conduct an accident investigation for recordable injuries and illnesses, property damage, and near misses as defined in EM 385-1-1, to establish the root cause(s) of the accident. The Contracting Officer will provide copies of any required or special forms.
- b. Near Misses: Near miss reports are considered positive and proactive Contractor safety management actions.
- c. Conduct an accident investigation for any load handling equipment accident (including rigging accidents) to establish the root cause(s) of the accident. Complete the LHE Accident Report (Crane and Rigging Accident Report) form and provide the report to the Contracting Officer within 30 calendar days of the accident. Do not proceed with crane operations until cause is determined and corrective actions have been implemented to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer will provide a blank copy of the accident report form.

#### 1.11.3 LHE Inspection Reports

Submit LHE inspection reports required in accordance with EM 385-1-1 and as specified herein with Daily Reports of Inspections.

#### 1.11.4 Certificate of Compliance and Pre-lift Plan/Checklist for LHE and Rigging

Provide a FORM 16-1 Certificate of Compliance for LHE entering an activity under this contract and in accordance with EM 385-1-1. Post certifications on the crane.

Develop a Standard Lift Plan (SLP) in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 16.H.03 using Form 16-2 Standard Pre-Lift Crane Plan/Checklist for each lift planned. Submit SLP to the Contracting Officer for approval within 15 calendar days in advance of planned lift.

#### 1.12 SEVERE STORM PLAN

In the event of a severe storm warning, the Contractor must:

- a. Secure outside equipment and materials and place materials that could be damaged in protected areas.
- b. Check surrounding area, including roof, for loose material, equipment, debris, and other objects that could be blown away or against existing facilities.
- c. Ensure that temporary erosion controls are adequate.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.1 CONSTRUCTION AND OTHER WORK

Comply with EM 385-1-1, NFPA 70, NFPA 70E, NFPA 241, the APP, the AHA, Federal and State OSHA regulations, and other related submittals and activity fire and safety regulations. The most stringent standard prevails.



PPE is governed in all areas by the nature of the work the employee is performing. Use personal hearing protection at all times in designated noise hazardous areas or when performing noise hazardous tasks. Safety glasses must be worn or carried/available on each person. Mandatory PPE includes:

- a. Hard Hat
- b. Long Pants
- c. Appropriate Safety Shoes
- d. Appropriate Class Reflective Vests

#### 3.1.1 Worksite Communication

Employees working alone in a remote location or away from other workers must be provided an effective means of emergency communications (i.e., cellular phone, two-way radios, land-line telephones or other acceptable means). The selected communication must be readily available (easily within the immediate reach) of the employee and must be tested prior to the start of work to verify that it effectively operates in the area/environment. An employee check-in/check-out communication procedure must be developed to ensure employee safety.

#### 3.1.2 Hazardous Material Exclusions

Notwithstanding any other hazardous material used in this contract, radioactive materials or instruments capable of producing ionizing/non-ionizing radiation (with the exception of radioactive material and devices used in accordance with EM 385-1-1 such as nuclear density meters for compaction testing and laboratory equipment with radioactive sources) as well as materials which contain asbestos, mercury or polychlorinated biphenyls, di-isocyanates, lead-based paint, and hexavalent chromium, are prohibited. The Contracting Officer, upon written request by the Contractor, may consider exceptions to the use of any of the above excluded materials. Low mercury lamps used within fluorescent lighting fixtures are allowed as an exception without further Contracting Officer approval. Notify the Radiation Safety Officer (RSO) prior to excepted items of radioactive material and devices being brought on base.

#### 3.1.3 Unforeseen Hazardous Material

Contract documents identify materials such as PCB, lead paint, and friable and non-friable asbestos and other OSHA regulated chemicals (i.e. 29 CFR Part 1910.1000). If material(s) that may be hazardous to human health upon disturbance are encountered during construction operations, stop that portion of work and notify the Contracting Officer immediately. Within 14 calendar days the Government will determine if the material is hazardous. If material is not hazardous or poses no danger, the Government will direct the Contractor to proceed without change. If material is hazardous and handling of the material is necessary to accomplish the work, the Government will issue a modification pursuant to FAR 52.243-4 Changes and FAR 52.236-2 Differing Site Conditions.

#### 3.2 FALL PROTECTION PROGRAM

Establish a fall protection program, for the protection of all employees

exposed to fall hazards. Within the program include company policy, identify roles and responsibilities, education and training requirements, fall hazard identification, prevention and control measures, inspection, storage, care and maintenance of fall protection equipment and rescue and evacuation procedures in accordance with ASSP Z359.2 and EM 385-1-1, Sections 21.A and 21.D.

### 3.2.1 Training

Institute a fall protection training program. As part of the Fall Protection Program, provide training for each employee who might be exposed to fall hazards. Provide training by a competent person for fall protection in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 21.C. Document training and practical application of the competent person in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 21.C.04 and ASSP Z359.2 in the AHA.

### 3.2.2 Fall Protection Equipment and Systems

Enforce use of personal fall protection equipment and systems designated (to include fall arrest, restraint, and positioning) for each specific work activity in the Site Specific Fall Protection and Prevention Plan and AHA at all times when an employee is exposed to a fall hazard. Protect employees from fall hazards as specified in EM 385-1-1, Section 21.

Provide personal fall protection equipment, systems, subsystems, and components that comply with EM 385-1-1 Section 21.I, 29 CFR 1926.500 Subpart M, ASSP Z359.0, ASSP Z359.1, ASSP Z359.2, ASSP Z359.3, ASSP Z359.4, ASSP Z359.6, ASSP Z359.7, ASSP Z359.11, ASSP Z359.12, ASSP Z359.13, ASSP Z359.14, and ASSP Z359.15.

#### 3.2.2.1 Additional Personal Fall Protection

In addition to the required fall protection systems, other protection such as safety skiffs, personal floatation devices, and life rings, are required when working above or next to water in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Sections 21.0 through 21.0.06. Personal fall protection systems and equipment are required when working from an articulating or extendible boom, swing stages, or suspended platform. In addition, personal fall protection systems are required when operating other equipment such as scissor lifts. The need for tying-off in such equipment is to prevent ejection of the employee from the equipment during raising, lowering, travel, or while performing work.

#### 3.2.2.2 Personal Fall Protection Harnesses

Only a full-body harness with a shock-absorbing lanyard or self-retracting lanyard is an acceptable personal fall arrest body support device. The use of body belts is not acceptable. Harnesses must have a fall arrest attachment affixed to the body support (usually a Dorsal D-ring) and specifically designated for attachment to the rest of the system. Snap hooks and carabiners must be self-closing and self-locking, capable of being opened only by at least two consecutive deliberate actions and have a minimum gate strength of 3,600 lbs in all directions. Use webbing, straps, and ropes made of synthetic fiber. The maximum free fall distance when using fall arrest equipment must not exceed 6 feet, unless the proper energy absorbing lanyard is used. Always take into consideration the total fall distance and any swinging of the worker (pendulum-like motion), that can occur during a fall, when attaching a person to a fall arrest system. All full body harnesses must be equipped with Suspension Trauma Preventers

such as stirrups, relief steps, or similar in order to provide short-term relief from the effects of orthostatic intolerance in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 21.I.06.

### 3.2.3 Fall Protection for Roofing Work

Implement fall protection controls based on the type of roof being constructed and work being performed. Evaluate the roof area to be accessed for its structural integrity including weight-bearing capabilities for the projected loading.

#### a. Low Sloped Roofs:

- (1) For work within 6 feet of an edge, on a roof having a slope less than or equal to 4:12 (vertical to horizontal), protect personnel from falling by use of personal fall arrest/restraint systems, guardrails, or safety nets. A safety monitoring system is not adequate fall protection and is not authorized. Provide in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.500.
- (2) For work greater than 6 feet from an edge, erect and install warning lines in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.500 and EM 385-1-1, Section L.

#### b. Steep-Sloped Roofs: Work on a roof having a slope greater than 4:12 (vertical to horizontal) requires a personal fall arrest system, guardrails with toe-boards, or safety nets. This requirement also applies to residential or housing type construction.

### 3.2.4 Horizontal Lifelines (HLL)

Provide HLL in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 21.I.08.d.2. Commercially manufactured horizontal lifelines (HLL) must be designed, installed, certified and used, under the supervision of a qualified person, for fall protection as part of a complete fall arrest system which maintains a safety factor of 2 (29 CFR 1926.500). The competent person for fall protection may (if deemed appropriate by the qualified person) supervise the assembly, disassembly, use and inspection of the HLL system under the direction of the qualified person. Locally manufactured HLLs are not acceptable unless they are custom designed for limited or site specific applications by a Registered Professional Engineer who is qualified in designing HLL systems.

### 3.2.5 Guardrails and Safety Nets

Design, install and use guardrails and safety nets in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 21.F.01 and 29 CFR 1926 Subpart M.

### 3.2.6 Rescue and Evacuation Plan and Procedures

When personal fall arrest systems are used, ensure that the mishap victim can self-rescue or can be rescued promptly should a fall occur. Prepare a Rescue and Evacuation Plan and include a detailed discussion of the following: methods of rescue; methods of self-rescue or assisted-rescue; equipment used; training requirement; specialized training for the rescuers; procedures for requesting rescue and medical assistance; and transportation routes to a medical facility. Include the Rescue and Evacuation Plan within the Activity Hazard Analysis (AHA) for the phase of work, in the Fall Protection and Prevention (FP&P) Plan, and the Accident

Prevention Plan (APP). The plan must comply with the requirements of EM 385-1-1, ASSP Z359.2, and ASSP Z359.4.

### 3.3 WORK PLATFORMS

#### 3.3.1 Scaffolding

Provide employees with a safe means of access to the work area on the scaffold. Climbing of any scaffold braces or supports not specifically designed for access is prohibited. Comply with the following requirements:

- a. Scaffold platforms greater than 20 feet in height must be accessed by use of a scaffold stair system.
- b. Ladders commonly provided by scaffold system manufacturers are prohibited for accessing scaffold platforms greater than 20 feet maximum in height.
- c. An adequate gate is required.
- d. Employees performing scaffold erection and dismantling must be qualified.
- e. Scaffold must be capable of supporting at least four times the maximum intended load, and provide appropriate fall protection as delineated in the accepted fall protection and prevention plan.
- f. Stationary scaffolds must be attached to structural building components to safeguard against tipping forward or backward.
- g. Special care must be given to ensure scaffold systems are not overloaded.
- h. Side brackets used to extend scaffold platforms on self-supported scaffold systems for the storage of material are prohibited. The first tie-in must be at the height equal to 4 times the width of the smallest dimension of the scaffold base.
- i. Scaffolding other than suspended types must bear on base plates upon wood mudsills (2 in x 10 in x 8 in minimum) or other adequate firm foundation.
- j. Scaffold or work platform erectors must have fall protection during the erection and dismantling of scaffolding or work platforms that are more than 6 feet.
- k. Delineate fall protection requirements when working above 6 feet or above dangerous operations in the Fall Protection and Prevention (FP&P) Plan and Activity Hazard Analysis (AHA) for the phase of work.

#### 3.3.2 Elevated Aerial Work Platforms (AWPs)

Workers must be anchored to the basket or bucket in accordance with manufacturer's specifications and instructions (anchoring to the boom may only be used when allowed by the manufacturer and permitted by the CP). Lanyards used must be sufficiently short to prohibit worker from climbing out of basket. The climbing of rails is prohibited. Lanyards with built-in shock absorbers are acceptable. Self-retracting devices are not acceptable. Tying off to an adjacent pole or structure is not permitted

unless a safe device for 100 percent tie-off is used for the transfer.

Use of AWP's must be operated, inspected, and maintained as specified in the operating manual for the equipment and delineated in the AHA. Operators of AWP's must be designated as qualified operators by the Prime Contractor. Maintain proof of qualifications on site for review and include in the AHA.

### 3.4 EQUIPMENT

#### 3.4.1 Material Handling Equipment (MHE)

- a. Material handling equipment such as forklifts must not be modified with work platform attachments for supporting employees unless specifically delineated in the manufacturer's printed operating instructions. Material handling equipment fitted with personnel work platform attachments are prohibited from traveling or positioning while personnel are working on the platform.
- b. The use of hooks on equipment for lifting of material must be in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Material Handling Equipment Operators must be trained in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR 1910, Subpart N.
- c. Operators of forklifts or power industrial trucks must be licensed in accordance with OSHA.

#### 3.4.2 Load Handling Equipment (LHE)

The following requirements apply. In exception, these requirements do not apply to commercial truck mounted and articulating boom cranes used solely to deliver material and supplies (not prefabricated components, structural steel, or components of a systems-engineered metal building) where the lift consists of moving materials and supplies from a truck or trailer to the ground; to cranes installed on mechanics trucks that are used solely in the repair of shore-based equipment; to crane that enter the activity but are not used for lifting; nor to other machines not used to lift loads suspended by rigging equipment. However, LHE accidents occurring during such operations must be reported.

- a. Equip cranes and derricks as specified in EM 385-1-1, Section 16.
- b. Notify the Contracting Officer 15 working days in advance of any LHE entering the activity, in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 16.A.02, so that necessary quality assurance spot checks can be coordinated. Contractor's operator must remain with the crane during the spot check. Rigging gear must comply with OSHA, ASME B30.9 Standards safety standards.
- c. Comply with the LHE manufacturer's specifications and limitations for erection and operation of cranes and hoists used in support of the work. Perform erection under the supervision of a designated person (as defined in ASME B30.5). Perform all testing in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended procedures.
- d. Comply with ASME B30.5 for mobile and locomotive cranes, ASME B30.22 for articulating boom cranes, ASME B30.3 for construction tower cranes, ASME B30.8 for floating cranes and floating derricks, ASME B30.9 for slings, ASME B30.20 for below the hook lifting devices and ASME B30.26 for rigging hardware.

- e. When operating in the vicinity of overhead transmission lines, operators and riggers must be alert to this special hazard and follow the requirements of **EM 385-1-1** Section 11, and **ASME B30.5** or **ASME B30.22** as applicable.
  - f. Do not use crane suspended personnel work platforms (baskets) unless the Contractor proves that using any other access to the work location would provide a greater hazard to the workers or is impossible. Do not lift personnel with a line hoist or friction crane. Additionally, submit a specific AHA for this work to the Contracting Officer. Ensure the activity and AHA are thoroughly reviewed by all involved personnel.
  - g. Inspect, maintain, and recharge portable fire extinguishers as specified in **NFPA 10**, Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers.
  - h. All employees must keep clear of loads about to be lifted and of suspended loads, except for employees required to handle the load.
  - i. Use cribbing when performing lifts on outriggers.
  - j. The crane hook/block must be positioned directly over the load. Side loading of the crane is prohibited.
  - k. A physical barricade must be positioned to prevent personnel access where accessible areas of the LHE's rotating superstructure poses a risk of striking, pinching or crushing personnel.
  - l. Maintain inspection records in accordance by **EM 385-1-1**, Section 16.D, including shift, monthly, and annual inspections, the signature of the person performing the inspection, and the serial number or other identifier of the LHE that was inspected. Records must be available for review by the Contracting Officer.
  - m. Maintain written reports of operational and load testing in accordance with **EM 385-1-1**, Section 16.F, listing the load test procedures used along with any repairs or alterations performed on the LHE. Reports must be available for review by the Contracting Officer.
  - n. Certify that all LHE operators have been trained in proper use of all safety devices (e.g. anti-two block devices).
  - o. Take steps to ensure that wind speed does not contribute to loss of control of the load during lifting operations. At wind speeds greater than **20 mph**, the operator, rigger and lift supervisor must cease all crane operations, evaluate conditions and determine if the lift may proceed. Base the determination to proceed or not on wind calculations per the manufacturer and a reduction in LHE rated capacity if applicable. Include this maximum wind speed determination as part of the activity hazard analysis plan for that operation.
- 3.4.3 Machinery and Mechanized Equipment
- a. Proof of qualifications for operator must be kept on the project site for review.
  - b. Manufacture specifications or owner's manual for the equipment must be on-site and reviewed for additional safety precautions or requirements that are sometimes not identified by OSHA or USACE **EM 385-1-1**.

Incorporate such additional safety precautions or requirements into the AHAs.

- c. Submit a Machinery & Mechanized Equipment Certifications Form to the Contracting Officer prior to being placed into use.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



SECTION 01 42 00

SOURCES FOR REFERENCE PUBLICATIONS  
02/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

Various publications are referenced in other sections of the specifications to establish requirements for the work. These references are identified in each section by document number, date and title. The document number used in the citation is the number assigned by the standards producing organization (e.g. ASTM B564 Standard Specification for Nickel Alloy Forgings). However, when the standards producing organization has not assigned a number to a document, an identifying number has been assigned for reference purposes.

1.2 ORDERING INFORMATION

The addresses of the standards publishing organizations whose documents are referenced in other sections of these specifications are listed below, and if the source of the publications is different from the address of the sponsoring organization, that information is also provided.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)  
444 North Capital Street, NW, Suite 249  
Washington, DC 20001  
Ph: 202-624-5800  
Fax: 202-624-5806  
E-Mail: [info@aaashto.org](mailto:info@aaashto.org)  
Internet: <https://www.transportation.org/>

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE (ACI)  
38800 Country Club Drive  
Farmington Hills, MI 48331-3439  
Ph: 248-848-3700  
Fax: 248-848-3701  
Internet: <https://www.concrete.org/>

AMERICAN HARDBOARD ASSOCIATION (AHA)  
1210 West Northwest Highway  
Palatine, IL 60067  
Ph: 847-934-8800  
Fax: 847-934-8803  
E-mail: [aha@hardboard.org](mailto:aha@hardboard.org)  
Internet: <http://domensino.com/AHA/>

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY PROFESSIONALS (ASSP)  
520 N. Northwest Highway  
Park Ridge, IL 60068  
Ph: 847-699-2929  
E-mail: [customerservice@assp.org](mailto:customerservice@assp.org)  
Internet: <https://www.assp.org/>

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)  
6666 W. Quincy Avenue  
Denver, CO 80235 USA  
Ph: 303-794-7711 or 800-926-7337  
Fax: 303-347-0804  
Internet: <https://www.awwa.org/>

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)  
8669 NW 36 Street, #130  
Miami, FL 33166-6672  
Ph: 800-443-9353  
Internet: <https://www.aws.org/>

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)  
Two Park Avenue  
New York, NY 10016-5990  
Ph: 800-843-2763  
Fax: 973-882-1717  
E-mail: [customercare@asme.org](mailto:customercare@asme.org)  
Internet: <https://www.asme.org/>

ASPHALT INSTITUTE (AI)  
2696 Research Park Drive  
Lexington, KY 40511-8480  
Ph: 859-288-4960  
Fax: 859-288-4999  
E-mail: [info@asphaltinstitute.org](mailto:info@asphaltinstitute.org)  
Internet: <http://www.asphaltinstitute.org>

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)  
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700  
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959  
Ph: 610-832-9500  
Fax: 610-832-9555  
E-mail: [service@astm.org](mailto:service@astm.org)  
Internet: <https://www.astm.org/>

CONCRETE REINFORCING STEEL INSTITUTE (CRSI)  
933 North Plum Grove Road  
Schaumburg, IL 60173-4758  
Ph: 847-517-1200  
Fax: 847-517-1206  
Internet: <http://www.crsi.org/>

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)  
445 and 501 Hoes Lane  
Piscataway, NJ 08854-4141  
Ph: 732-981-0060 or 800-701-4333  
Fax: 732-981-9667  
E-mail: [onlinesupport@ieee.org](mailto:onlinesupport@ieee.org)  
Internet: <https://www.ieee.org/>

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)  
500 New Jersey Avenue, NW  
6th Floor, Washington, DC 20001  
Ph: 800-786-4452 or 888-422-7233  
Fax: 202-783-2348  
E-mail: [order@iccsafe.org](mailto:order@iccsafe.org)

Internet: <https://www.iccsafe.org/>

INTERNATIONAL CONCRETE REPAIR INSTITUTE (ICRI)  
1000 Westgate Drive, Suite 252  
St. Paul, MN 55114  
Ph: 651-366-6095  
Fax: 651-290-2266  
E-mail: [info@icri.org](mailto:info@icri.org)  
Internet: <https://www.icri.org/>

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)  
3050 Old Centre Ave. Suite 101  
Portage, MI 49024  
Ph: 269-488-6382  
Fax: 269-488-6383  
Internet: <https://www.netaworld.org/>

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)  
1300 North 17th Street, Suite 900  
Arlington, VA 22209  
Ph: 703-841-3200  
Internet: <https://www.nema.org>

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)  
1 Batterymarch Park  
Quincy, MA 02169-7471  
Ph: 800-344-3555  
Fax: 800-593-6372  
Internet: <https://www.nfpa.org>

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)  
100 Bureau Drive  
Gaithersburg, MD 20899  
Ph: 301-975-2000  
Internet: <https://www.nist.gov/>

SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)  
400 Commonwealth Drive  
Warrendale, PA 15096  
Ph: 877-606-7323 or 724-776-4841  
Fax: 724-776-0790  
E-mail: [customerservice@sae.org](mailto:customerservice@sae.org)  
Internet: <https://www.sae.org/>

SOCIETY OF CABLE TELECOMMUNICATIONS ENGINEERS (SCTE)  
140 Philips Road  
Exton, PA 19341-1318  
Ph: 800-542-5040 or 610-363-6888  
Fax: 610-884-7237  
E-Mail: [info@scte.org](mailto:info@scte.org)  
Internet: <https://www.scte.org/>

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)  
1320 North Courthouse Road, Suite 200  
Arlington, VA 22201  
Ph: 703-907-7700  
Fax: 703-907-7727  
E-mail: [marketing@tiaonline.org](mailto:marketing@tiaonline.org)

Internet: <https://www.tiaonline.org/>

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)  
CRD-C DOCUMENTS available on Internet:

<http://www.wbdg.org/ffc/army-coe/standards>

Order Other Documents from:

Official Publications of the Headquarters, USACE

E-mail: [hqpublications@usace.army.mil](mailto:hqpublications@usace.army.mil)

Internet: <http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/>

or

<https://www.hnc.usace.army.mil/Missions/Engineering-Directorate/TECHINFO/>

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA)

Order AMS Publications from:

AGRICULTURAL MARKETING SERVICE (AMS)

Seed Regulatory and Testing Branch

801 Summit Crossing Place, Suite C

Gastonia, NC 28054-2193

Ph: 704-810-8884

E-mail: [PA@ams.usda.gov](mailto:PA@ams.usda.gov)

Internet: <https://www.ams.usda.gov/>

Order Other Publications from:

USDA Rural Development

Rural Utilities Service

STOP 1510, Rm 5135

1400 Independence Avenue SW

Washington, DC 20250-1510

Phone: (202) 720-9540

Internet:

<https://www.rd.usda.gov/about-rd/agencies/rural-utilities-service>

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

Order DOD Documents from:

Room 3A750-The Pentagon

1400 Defense Pentagon

Washington, DC 20301-1400

Ph: 703-571-3343

Fax: 215-697-1462

E-mail: [customerservice@ntis.gov](mailto:customerservice@ntis.gov)

Internet: <https://www.ntis.gov/>

Obtain Military Specifications, Standards and Related Publications  
from:

Acquisition Streamlining and Standardization Information System  
(ASSIST)

Department of Defense Single Stock Point (DODSSP)

Document Automation and Production Service (DAPS)

Building 4/D

700 Robbins Avenue

Philadelphia, PA 19111-5094

Ph: 215-697-6396 - for account/password issues

Internet: <https://assist.dla.mil/online/start/>; account  
registration required

Obtain Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC) from:

Whole Building Design Guide (WBDG)

National Institute of Building Sciences (NIBS)

1090 Vermont Avenue NW, Suite 700

Washington, DC 20005

Ph: 202-289-7800

Fax: 202-289-1092

Internet:

<https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-criteria-ufc>

U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA)

1200 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.

Washington, DC 20004

Ph: 202-564-4700

Internet: <https://www.epa.gov>

--- Some EPA documents are available only from:

National Technical Information Service (NTIS)

5301 Shawnee Road

Alexandria, VA 22312

Ph: 703-605-6060 or 1-800-363-2068

Fax: 703-605-6880

TDD: 703-487-4639

E-mail: [info@ntis.gov](mailto:info@ntis.gov)

Internet: <https://www.ntis.gov/>

U.S. FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION (FAA)

Order for sale documents from:

Superintendent of Documents

U.S. Government Publishing Office (GPO)

732 N. Capitol Street, NW

Washington, DC 20401

Ph: 202-512-1800 or 866-512-1800

Bookstore: 202-512-0132

Internet: <https://www.gpo.gov/>

Order free documents from:

U.S. Department of Transportation

Federal Aviation Administration

800 Independence Avenue, SW

Washington, DC 20591

Ph: 866-835-5322

Internet: <https://www.faa.gov/>

U.S. FEDERAL HIGHWAY ADMINISTRATION (FHWA)

1200 New Jersey Ave., SE

Washington, DC 20590

Ph: 202-366-4000

E-mail: [ExecSecretariat.FHWA@dot.gov](mailto:ExecSecretariat.FHWA@dot.gov)

Internet: <https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/>

Order from:

Superintendent of Documents

U.S. Government Publishing Office (GPO)

732 N. Capitol Street, NW

Washington, DC 20401

Ph: 202-512-1800 or 866-512-1800

Bookstore: 202-512-0132

Internet: <https://www.gpo.gov/>

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

General Services Administration

1800 F Street, NW

Washington, DC 20405

Ph: 1-844-472-4111

Internet: <https://www.gsaelibrary.gsa.gov/ElibMain/home.do>

Obtain documents from:

Acquisition Streamlining and Standardization Information System  
(ASSIST)

Internet: <https://assist.dla.mil/online/start/>; account  
registration required

U. S. GREEN BUILDING COUNCIL (USGBC)  
2101 L St NW, Suite 500  
Washington, DC 20037  
Ph: 202-828-7422  
Internet: <https://new.usgbc.org/>

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)  
8601 Adelphi Road  
College Park, MD 20740-6001  
Ph: 866-272-6272  
Internet: <https://www.archives.gov/>  
Order documents from:  
Superintendent of Documents  
U.S. Government Publishing Office (GPO)  
732 N. Capitol Street, NW  
Washington, DC 20401  
Ph: 202-512-1800 or 866-512-1800  
Bookstore: 202-512-0132  
Internet: <https://www.gpo.gov/>

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)  
2600 N.W. Lake Road  
Camas, WA 98607-8542  
Ph: 877-854-3577 or 360-817-5500  
E-mail: CustomerExperienceCenter@ul.com  
Internet: <https://www.ul.com/>  
UL Directories available through IHS at <https://ihsmarkit.com/>

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not used

## PART 3 EXECUTION

Not used

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 45 00.10 10

QUALITY CONTROL FOR MINOR CONSTRUCTION

02/10

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1

(2014) Safety and Health Requirements  
Manual

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

QC Plan; G

1.3 INFORMATION FOR THE CONTRACTING OFFICER (KO)

Prior to commencing work on construction, the Contractor can obtain a single copy set of the current report forms from the KO. The report forms will consist of the Contractor Production Report, Contractor Production Report (Continuation Sheet), Contractor Quality Control (CQC) Report, CQC Report (Continuation Sheet), Preparatory Phase Checklist, Initial Phase Checklist, Rework Items List, and Testing Plan and Log.

Deliver the following to the KO:

- a. CQC Report: Original and one copy, by 10:00 AM the next working day after that work is performed;
- b. Contractor Production Report: Original and one copy by 10:00 AM the next working day after that work is performed;
- c. Preparatory Phase Checklist: Original attached to the original CQC Report and one copy attached to each copy;
- d. Initial Phase Checklist: Original attached to the original CQC Report and one copy attached to each copy;
- e. Field Test Reports: One copy, within two working days after the test is performed, attached to the CQC Report;
- f. QC Meeting Minutes: One copy, within two working days after the meeting; and

g. QC Certifications: As required by the paragraph entitled "QC Certifications."

#### 1.4 QC PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS

Establish and maintain a QC program as described in this section. The QC program consists of a QC Manager, a QC plan, a Coordination and Mutual Understanding Meeting, QC meetings, three phases of control, submittal review and approval, testing, and QC certifications and documentation necessary to provide materials, equipment, workmanship, fabrication, construction and operations which comply with the requirements of this contract. The QC program shall cover on-site and off-site work and shall be keyed to the work sequence. No work or testing may be performed unless the QC Manager is on the work site.

##### 1.4.1 Preliminary Work Authorized Prior to Acceptance

The only work that is authorized to proceed prior to the acceptance of the QC plan is mobilization of storage and office trailers, temporary utilities, and surveying.

##### 1.4.2 Acceptance

Acceptance of the QC plan is required prior to the start of construction. The KO reserves the right to require changes in the QC plan and operations as necessary, including removal of personnel, to ensure the specified quality of work. The KO reserves the right to interview any member of the QC organization at any time in order to verify the submitted qualifications.

##### 1.4.3 Notification of Changes

Notify the KO, in writing, of any proposed change, including changes in the QC organization personnel, a minimum of seven calendar days prior to a proposed change. Proposed changes shall be subject to the acceptance by the KO.

#### 1.5 QC ORGANIZATION

##### 1.5.1 QC Manager

###### 1.5.1.1 Duties

Provide a QC Manager at the work site to implement and manage the QC program. In addition to implementing and managing the QC program, the QC Manager may perform the duties of project superintendent. The QC Manager is required to attend the Coordination and Mutual Understanding Meeting, conduct the QC meetings, perform the three phases of control, perform submittal review and approval, ensure testing is performed and provide QC certifications and documentation required in this contract. The QC Manager is responsible for managing and coordinating the three phases of control and documentation performed by others.

###### 1.5.1.2 Qualifications

An individual with a minimum of 10 years combined experience as a superintendent, inspector, QC Manager, project manager, or construction manager on similar size and type construction contracts which included the major trades that are part of this contract. The individual must be



familiar with the requirements of the EM 385-1-1 and have experience in the areas of hazard identification and safety compliance.

#### 1.5.1.3 Construction Quality Management Training

In addition to the above experience and education requirements, the QC Manager shall have completed the course Construction Quality Management for Contractors and will have a current certificate.

#### 1.5.2 Alternate QC Manager Duties and Qualifications

Designate an alternate for the QC Manager to serve in the event of the designated QC Manager's absence. The period of absence may not exceed two weeks at one time, and not more than 30 workdays during a calendar year. The qualification requirements for the Alternate QC Manager shall be the same as for the QC Manager.

### 1.6 QC PLAN

Submit a QC plan within 15 calendar days after receipt of Notice of Award.

#### 1.6.1 Requirements

Provide, for acceptance by the KO, a QC plan submitted in a three-ring binder that covers both on-site and off-site work and includes the following with a table of contents listing the major sections identified with tabs.

- I. QC ORGANIZATION: A chart showing the QC organizational structure and its relationship to the production side of the organization.
- II. NAMES AND QUALIFICATIONS: In resume format, for each person in the QC organization. Include the CQM for Contractors course certification required by the paragraph entitled "Construction Quality Management Training".
- III. DUTIES, RESPONSIBILITY AND AUTHORITY OF QC PERSONAL: Of each person in the QC organization.
- IV. OUTSIDE ORGANIZATIONS: A listing of outside organizations such as architectural and consulting engineering firms that will be employed by the Contractor and a description of the services these firms will provide.
- V. APPOINTMENT LETTERS: Letters signed by an officer of the firm appointing the QC Manager and Alternate QC Manager and stating that they are responsible for managing and implementing the QC program as described in this contract. Include in this letter the QC Manager's authority to direct the removal and replacement of non-conforming work.
- VI. SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES AND INITIAL SUBMITTAL REGISTER: Procedures for reviewing, approving and managing submittals. Provide the name(s) of the person(s) in the QC organization authorized to review and certify submittals prior to approval.
- VII. TESTING LABORATORY INFORMATION: Testing laboratory information required by the paragraphs "Accredited Laboratories" or "Testing Laboratory Requirements", as applicable.

- VIII. TESTING PLAN AND LOG: A Testing Plan and Log that includes the tests required, referenced by the specification paragraph number requiring the test, the frequency, and the person responsible for each test.
- IX. PROCEDURES TO COMPLETE REWORK ITEMS: Procedures to identify, record, track and complete rework items.
- X. DOCUMENTATION PROCEDURES: Use Government formats.
- XI. LIST OF DEFINABLE FEATURES: A Definable Feature of Work (DFOW) is a task, which is separate and distinct from other tasks, has the same control requirements and work crews. The list shall be cross-referenced to the Contractor's Construction Schedule and the specification sections. For projects requiring a Progress Chart, the list of definable features of work shall include but not be limited to all items of work on the schedule. For projects requiring a Network Analysis Schedule, the list of definable features of work shall include but not be limited to all critical path activities.
- XII. PROCEDURES FOR PERFORMING THREE PHASES OF CONTROL: For each DFOW provide Preparatory and Initial Phase Checklists. Each list shall include a breakdown of quality checks that will be used when performing the quality control functions, inspections, and tests required by the contract documents. The preparatory and initial phases shall be conducted with a view towards obtaining quality construction by planning ahead and identifying potential problems.
- XIII. PERSONNEL MATRIX: Not Applicable.
- XIV. PROCEDURES FOR COMPLETION INSPECTION: See the paragraph entitled "COMPLETION INSPECTIONS".
- XV. TRAINING PROCEDURES AND TRAINING LOG: Not Applicable.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION AND MUTUAL UNDERSTANDING MEETING

During the Pre-Construction conference and prior to the start of construction, discuss the QC program required by this contract. The purpose of this meeting is to develop a mutual understanding of the QC details, including documentation, administration for on-site and off-site work, and the coordination of the Contractor's management, production and the QC personnel. At the meeting, the Contractor will be required to explain how three phases of control will be implemented for each DFOW. Contractor's personnel required to attend shall include the QC Manager, project manager, and superintendent. Minutes of the meeting will be prepared by the QC Manager and signed by both the Contractor and the KO. The Contractor shall provide a copy of the signed minutes to all attendees. Repeat the coordination and mutual understanding meeting when a new QC Manager is appointed.

#### 1.8 QC MEETINGS

After the start of construction, the QC Manager shall conduct QC meetings once every two weeks at the work site with the superintendent and the foreman responsible for the ongoing and upcoming work. The QC Manager shall prepare the minutes of the meeting and provide a copy to the KO

within two working days after the meeting. As a minimum, the following shall be accomplished at each meeting:

- a. Review the minutes of the previous meeting;
- b. Review the schedule and the status of work and rework;
- c. Review the status of submittals;
- d. Review the work to be accomplished in the next two weeks and documentation required;
- e. Resolve QC and production problems (RFIs, etc.);
- f. Address items that may require revising the QC plan; and
- g. Review Accident Prevention Plan (APP).

#### 1.9 THREE PHASES OF CONTROL

The three phases of control shall adequately cover both on-site and off-site work and shall include the following for each DFO.

##### 1.9.1 Preparatory Phase

Notify the KO at least two work days in advance of each preparatory phase. Conduct the preparatory phase with the superintendent and the foreman responsible for the definable feature of work. Document the results of the preparatory phase actions in the daily CQC Report and in the QC checklist. Perform the following prior to beginning work on each definable feature of work:

- a. Review each paragraph of the applicable specification sections;
- b. Review the contract drawings;
- c. Verify that appropriate shop drawings and submittals for materials and equipment have been submitted and approved. Verify receipt of approved factory test results, when required;
- d. Review the testing plan and ensure that provisions have been made to provide the required QC testing;
- e. Examine the work area to ensure that the required preliminary work has been completed;
- f. Examine the required materials, equipment and sample work to ensure that they are on hand and conform to the approved shop drawings and submitted data;
- g. Review the APP and appropriate Activity Hazard Analysis (AHA) to ensure that applicable safety requirements are met, and that required Safety Data Sheets (SDS) are submitted; and
- h. Discuss specific controls used and the construction methods and the approach that will be used to provide quality construction by planning ahead and identifying potential problems for each DFO.

#### 1.9.2 Initial Phase

Notify the KO at least two work days in advance of each initial phase. Conduct the Initial Phase with the foreman responsible for that DFOV.. Observe the initial segment of the work to ensure that it complies with contract requirements. Document the results of the Initial Phase in the daily CQC Report and in the QC checklist. Perform the following for each DFOV:

- a. Establish the quality of workmanship required;
- b. Resolve conflicts;
- c. Ensure that testing is performed by the approved laboratory; and
- d. Check work procedures for compliance with the APP and the appropriate AHA to ensure that applicable safety requirements are met.

#### 1.9.3 Follow-Up Phase

Perform the following for on-going work daily, or more frequently as necessary, until the completion of each DFOV and document in the daily CQC Report and in the QC checklist:

- a. Ensure the work is in compliance with contract requirements;
- b. Maintain the quality of workmanship required;
- c. Ensure that testing is performed by the approved laboratory;
- d. Ensure that rework items are being corrected; and
- e. Assure manufacturers representatives have performed necessary inspections, if required.

#### 1.9.4 Additional Preparatory and Initial Phases

Additional preparatory and initial phases shall be conducted on the same DFOV if the quality of on-going work is unacceptable, if there are changes in the applicable QC organization, if there are changes in the on-site production supervision or work crew, if work on a DFOV is resumed after substantial period of inactivity, or if other problems develop.

#### 1.9.5 Notification of Three Phases of Control for Off-Site Work

Notify the KO at least two weeks prior to the start of the preparatory and initial phases.

#### 1.10 SUBMITTAL REVIEW AND APPROVAL

Procedures for submission, review, and approval of submittals are described in the submittal section of the specification.

#### 1.11 TESTING

Except as stated otherwise in the specification sections, perform sampling and testing required under this contract.

#### 1.11.1 Accreditation Requirements

Construction materials testing laboratories must be accredited by a laboratory accreditation authority and will be required to submit a copy of the Certificate of Accreditation and Scope of Accreditation. The laboratory's scope of accreditation must include the appropriate ASTM standards (i.e.; E 329, C 1077, D 3666, D 3740, A 880, E 543) listed in the technical sections of the specifications. Laboratories engaged in Hazardous Materials Testing shall meet the requirements of OSHA and EPA. The policy applies to the specific laboratory performing the actual testing, not just the "Corporate Office."

#### 1.11.2 Laboratory Accreditation Authorities

Laboratory Accreditation Authorities include the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) administered by the National Institute of Standards and Technology, the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO), International Accreditation Services, Inc. (IAS), U. S. Army Corps of Engineers Materials Testing Center (MTC), the American Association for Laboratory Accreditation (A2LA), the Washington Association of Building Officials (WABO) (Approval authority for WABO is limited to projects within Washington State), and the Washington Area Council of Engineering Laboratories (WACEL) (Approval authority by WACEL is limited to projects within the NAVFAC WASH and Public Works Center Washington geographical area).

#### 1.11.3 Capability Check

The KO retains the right to check laboratory equipment in the proposed laboratory and the laboratory technician's testing procedures, techniques, and other items pertinent to testing, for compliance with the standards set forth in this contract.

#### 1.11.4 Test Results

Cite applicable Contract requirements, tests or analytical procedures used. Provide actual results and include a statement that the item tested or analyzed conforms or fails to conform to specified requirements. If the item fails to conform, notify the KO immediately. Conspicuously stamp the cover sheet for each report in large red letters "CONFORMS" or "DOES NOT CONFORM" to the specification requirements, whichever is applicable. Test results shall be signed by a testing laboratory representative authorized to sign certified test reports. Furnish the signed reports, certifications, and other documentation to the KO.

### 1.12 QC CERTIFICATIONS

#### 1.12.1 Contractor Quality Control Report Certification

Each CQC Report shall contain the following statement: "On behalf of the Contractor, I certify that this report is complete and correct and equipment and material used and work performed during this reporting period is in compliance with the contract drawings and specifications to the best of my knowledge except as noted in this report."

#### 1.12.2 Invoice Certification

Furnish a certificate to the KO with each payment request, signed by the QC Manager, attesting that as-built drawings are current and attesting that

the work for which payment is requested, including stored material, is in compliance with contract requirements.

#### 1.12.3 Completion Certification

Upon completion of work under this contract, the QC Manager shall furnish a certificate to the KO attesting that "the work has been completed, inspected, tested and is in compliance with the contract."

#### 1.13 COMPLETION INSPECTIONS

##### 1.13.1 Punch-Out Inspection

Near the completion of all work or any increment thereof established by a completion time stated in the Contract clause "Commencement, Prosecution, and Completion of Work," or stated elsewhere in the specifications, the QC Manager shall conduct an inspection of the work and develop a punch list of items which do not conform to the approved drawings and specifications. Include in the punch list any remaining items of the "Rework Items List", which were not corrected prior to the Punch-Out inspection. The punch list shall include the estimated date by which the deficiencies will be corrected. A copy of the punch list shall be provided to the KO. The QC Manager or staff shall make follow-on inspections to ascertain that all deficiencies have been corrected. Once this is accomplished, the Contractor shall notify the Government that the facility is ready for the Government "Pre-Final Inspection".

##### 1.13.2 Pre-Final Inspection

The Government and QC manager will perform this inspection to verify that the facility is complete and ready to be occupied. A Government pre-final punch list may be developed as a result of this inspection. The QC Manager shall ensure that all items on this list are corrected prior to notifying the Government that a "Final" inspection with the customer can be scheduled. Any items noted on the "Pre-Final" inspection shall be corrected in a timely manner and shall be accomplished before the contract completion date for the work or any particular increment thereof if the project is divided into increments by separate completion dates.

##### 1.13.3 Final Acceptance Inspection

The QC Manager, the superintendent, or other Contractor management personnel and the KO will be in attendance at this inspection. Additional Government personnel may be in attendance. The final acceptance inspection will be formally scheduled by the KO based upon results of the "Pre-Final Inspection". Notice shall be given to the KO at least 14 days prior to the final inspection. The notice shall state that all specific items previously identified to the Contractor as being unacceptable will be complete by the date scheduled for the final acceptance inspection. Failure of the Contractor to have all contract work acceptably complete for this inspection will be cause for the KO to bill the Contractor for the Government's additional inspection cost in accordance with the contract clause "Inspection of Construction".

#### 1.14 DOCUMENTATION

Maintain current and complete records of on-site and off-site QC program operations and activities. The forms identified under the paragraph "INFORMATION FOR THE CONTRACTING OFFICER (KO)" shall be used. Reports are

required for each day work is performed. Account for each calendar day throughout the life of the contract. Every space on the forms must be filled in. Use N/A if nothing can be reported in one of the spaces. The superintendent and the QC Manager must prepare and sign the Contractor Production and CQC Reports, respectively. The reporting of work shall be identified by terminology consistent with the construction schedule. In the "remarks" section in this report which will contain pertinent information including directions received, problems encountered during construction, work progress and delays, conflicts or errors in the drawings or specifications, field changes, safety hazards encountered, instructions given and corrective actions taken, delays encountered and a record of visitors to the work site. For each remark given, identify the Schedule Activity No. that is associated with the remark.

#### 1.14.1 Quality Control Validation

Establish and maintain the following in a series of three ring binders. Binders shall be divided and tabbed as shown below. These binders shall be readily available to the Government's Quality Assurance Team during all business hours.

- a. All completed Preparatory and Initial Phase Checklists, arranged by specification section.
- b. All milestone inspections, arranged by Activity/Event Number.
- c. A current up-to-date copy of the Testing and Plan Log with supporting field test reports, arranged by specification section.
- d. Copies of all contract modifications, arranged in numerical order. Also include documentation that modified work was accomplished.
- e. A current up-to-date copy of the Rework Items List.
- f. Maintain up-to-date copies of all punch lists issued by the QC Staff on the Contractor and Sub-Contractors and all punch lists issued by the Government.

#### 1.14.2 As-Built Drawings

The QC Manager is required to review the as-built drawings, required by Section 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS, are kept current on a daily basis and marked to show deviations, which have been made from the Contract drawings. Ensure each deviation has been identified with the appropriate modifying documentation, e.g. PC number, modification number, RFI number, etc. The QC Manager shall initial each deviation or revision. Upon completion of work, the QC Manager shall submit a certificate attesting to the accuracy of the as-built drawings prior to submission to the KO.

#### 1.15 NOTIFICATION ON NON-COMPLIANCE

The KO will notify the Contractor of any detected non-compliance with the foregoing requirements. The Contractor shall take immediate corrective action. If the contractor fails or refuses to correct the non-compliant work, the KO will issue a non compliance notice. Such notice, when delivered to the Contractor at the work site, shall be deemed sufficient for the purpose of notification. If the Contractor fails or refuses to comply promptly, the KO may issue an order stopping all or part of the work

until satisfactory corrective action has been taken. The Contractor shall make no part of the time lost due to such stop orders the subject of claim for extension of time, for excess costs, or damages.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --



SECTION 01 50 00

TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES AND CONTROLS  
05/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1 (2014) Safety and Health Requirements  
Manual

U.S. FEDERAL HIGHWAY ADMINISTRATION (FHWA)

MUTCD (2015) Manual on Uniform Traffic Control  
Devices

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Construction Site Plan; G

Traffic Control Plan; G

1.3 CONSTRUCTION SITE PLAN

Prior to the start of work, submit a site plan showing the locations and dimensions of temporary facilities (including layouts and details, equipment and material storage area (onsite and offsite), and access and haul routes, avenues of ingress/egress to the fenced area and details of the fence installation. Identify any areas which may have to be graveled to prevent the tracking of mud. Indicate if the use of a supplemental or other staging area is desired. Show locations of safety and construction fences, site trailers, construction entrances, trash dumpsters, temporary sanitary facilities, and worker parking areas.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL

2.1.1 Haul Roads

Construct access and haul roads necessary for proper prosecution of the work under this contract in accordance with EM 385-1-1 Section 04.

Construct with suitable grades and widths; sharp curves, blind corners, and dangerous cross traffic are to be avoided. Provide necessary lighting, signs, barricades, and distinctive markings for the safe movement of traffic. The method of dust control, although optional, must be adequate to ensure safe operation at all times. Location, grade, width, and alignment of construction and hauling roads are subject to approval by the Contracting Officer. Lighting must be adequate to assure full and clear visibility for full width of haul road and work areas during any night work operations.

#### 2.1.2 Barricades

Erect and maintain temporary barricades to limit public access to hazardous areas. Whenever safe public access to paved areas such as roads, parking areas or sidewalks is prevented by construction activities or as otherwise necessary to ensure the safety of both pedestrian and vehicular traffic barricades will be required. Securely place barricades clearly visible with adequate illumination to provide sufficient visual warning of the hazard during both day and night.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EMPLOYEE PARKING

Construction contract employees will park privately owned vehicles in an area designated by the Contracting Officer. This area will be within reasonable walking distance of the construction site. Employee parking must not interfere with existing and established parking requirements of the government installation.

#### 3.2 TEMPORARY BULLETIN BOARD

Locate the bulletin board at the project site in a conspicuous place easily accessible to all employees, as approved by the Contracting Officer.

#### 3.3 TRAFFIC PROVISIONS

##### 3.3.1 Maintenance of Traffic

- a. Conduct operations in a manner that will not close any thoroughfare or interfere in any way with traffic on railways or highways except with written permission of the Contracting Officer at least 15 calendar days prior to the proposed modification date, and provide a [Traffic Control Plan](#) detailing the proposed controls to traffic movement for approval. The plan must be in accordance with State and local regulations and the [MUTCD](#), Part VI. . Contractor may move oversized and slow-moving vehicles to the worksite provided requirements of the highway authority have been met.
- b. Conduct work so as to minimize obstruction of traffic, and maintain traffic on at least half of the roadway width at all times. Obtain approval from the Contracting Officer prior to starting any activity that will obstruct traffic.
- c. Provide, erect, and maintain, at contractors expense, lights, barriers, signals, passageways, detours, and other items, that may be required by the Life Safety Signage, overhead protection authority having jurisdiction.

### 3.3.2 Protection of Traffic

Maintain and protect traffic on all affected roads during the construction period except as otherwise specifically directed by the Contracting Officer. Measures for the protection and diversion of traffic, including the provision of watchmen and flagmen, erection of barricades, placing of lights around and in front of equipment the work, and the erection and maintenance of adequate warning, danger, and direction signs, will be as required by the State and local authorities having jurisdiction. Protect the traveling public from damage to person and property. Minimize the interference with public traffic on roads selected for hauling material to and from the site. Investigate the adequacy of existing roads and their allowable load limit. Contractor is responsible for the repair of any damage to roads caused by construction operations.

### 3.3.3 Rush Hour Restrictions

Do not interfere with the peak traffic flows preceding and during normal operations without notification to and approval by the Contracting Officer.

### 3.4 CLEANUP

Remove construction debris, waste materials, packaging material and the like from the work site daily. Any dirt or mud which is tracked onto paved or surfaced roadways must be cleaned away. Store any salvageable materials resulting from demolition activities within the fenced area described above or at the supplemental storage area. Neatly stack stored materials not in trailers, whether new or salvaged.

### 3.5 RESTORATION OF STORAGE AREA

Upon completion of the project remove the bulletin board, signs, barricades, haul roads, and any other temporary products from the site. After removal of trailers, materials, and equipment from within the fenced area, remove the fence. Restore areas used during the performance of the contract to the original or better condition. Remove gravel used to traverse grassed areas and restore the area to its original condition, including top soil and seeding as necessary.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 57 19

TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

11/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 261 Identification and Listing of Hazardous Waste

40 CFR 261.7 Residues of Hazardous Waste in Empty Containers

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Environmental Protection

Environmental protection is the prevention/control of pollution and habitat disruption that may occur to the environment during construction. The control of environmental pollution and damage requires consideration of land, water, and air; biological and cultural resources; and includes management of visual aesthetics; noise; solid, chemical, gaseous, and liquid waste; radiant energy and radioactive material as well as other pollutants.

1.2.2 Sediment

Sediment is soil and other debris that have eroded and have been transported by runoff water or wind.

1.2.3 Solid Waste

1.2.3.1 Debris

Debris is non-hazardous solid material generated during the construction, demolition, or renovation of a structure that exceeds 2.5-inch particle size that is: a manufactured object; plant or animal matter; or natural geologic material (for example, cobbles and boulders), broken or removed concrete, masonry, and rock asphalt paving; ceramics; roofing paper and shingles. Inert materials may be reinforced with or contain ferrous wire, rods, accessories and weldments. A mixture of debris and other material such as soil or sludge is also subject to regulation as debris if the mixture is comprised primarily of debris by volume, based on visual inspection.

1.2.3.2 Recyclables

Recyclables are materials, equipment and assemblies such as doors, windows, door and window frames, plumbing fixtures, glazing and mirrors that are recovered and sold as recyclable, wiring, and structural components. It

also includes commercial-grade refrigeration equipment with Freon removed, household appliances where the basic material content is metal, clean polyethylene terephthalate bottles, cooking oil, used fuel oil, textiles, high-grade paper products and corrugated cardboard, stackable pallets in good condition, clean crating material, and clean rubber/vehicle tires. Metal meeting the definition of lead contaminated or lead based paint contaminated may not be included as recyclable if sold to a scrap metal company. Paint cans that meet the definition of empty containers in accordance with 40 CFR 261.7 may be included as recyclable if sold to a scrap metal company.

#### 1.2.3.3 Scrap Metal

This includes scrap and excess ferrous and non-ferrous metals such as reinforcing steel, structural shapes, pipe, and wire that are recovered or collected and disposed of as scrap. Scrap metal meeting the definition of hazardous material or hazardous waste is not included.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Preconstruction Survey

Environmental Protection Plan; G

Employee Training Records; G

#### SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Waste Determination Documentation; G

Regulatory Notifications; G

### 1.4 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS

Provide and maintain, during the life of the contract, environmental protection as defined. Plan for and provide environmental protective measures to control pollution that develops during construction practice. Plan for and provide environmental protective measures required to correct conditions that develop during the construction of permanent or temporary environmental features associated with the project. Protect the environmental resources within the project boundaries and those affected outside the limits of permanent work during the entire duration of this Contract. Comply with federal, state, and local regulations pertaining to the environment, including water, air, solid waste, hazardous waste and substances, oily substances, and noise pollution.

Tests and procedures assessing whether construction operations comply with Applicable Environmental Laws may be required. Analytical work must be performed by qualified laboratories; and where required by law, the laboratories must be certified.

#### 1.4.1 Conformance with the Environmental Management System

Perform work under this contract consistent with the policy and objectives identified in the installation's Environmental Management System (EMS). Perform work in a manner that conforms to objectives and targets of the environmental programs and operational controls identified by the EMS. Support Government personnel when environmental compliance and EMS audits are conducted by escorting auditors at the Project site, answering questions, and providing proof of records being maintained. Provide monitoring and measurement information as necessary to address environmental performance relative to environmental, energy, and transportation management goals. In the event an EMS nonconformance or environmental noncompliance associated with the contracted services, tasks, or actions occurs, take corrective and preventative actions. In addition, employees must be aware of their roles and responsibilities under the installation EMS and of how these EMS roles and responsibilities affect work performed under the contract.

Coordinate with the installation's EMS coordinator to identify training needs associated with environmental aspects and the EMS, and arrange training or take other action to meet these needs. Provide training documentation to the Contracting Officer. The Installation Environmental Office will retain associated environmental compliance records. Make EMS Awareness training completion certificates available to Government auditors during EMS audits and include the certificates in the Employee Training Records. See paragraph EMPLOYEE TRAINING RECORDS.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

##### 1.5.1 Preconstruction Survey and Protection of Features

This paragraph supplements the Contract Clause PROTECTION OF EXISTING VEGETATION, STRUCTURES, EQUIPMENT, UTILITIES, AND IMPROVEMENTS. Prior to start of any onsite construction activities, perform a [Preconstruction Survey](#) of the project site with the Contracting Officer, and take photographs showing existing environmental conditions in and adjacent to the site. Submit a report for the record. Include in the report a plan describing the features requiring protection under the provisions of the Contract Clauses, which are not specifically identified on the drawings as environmental features requiring protection along with the condition of trees, shrubs and grassed areas immediately adjacent to the site of work and adjacent to the Contractor's assigned storage area and access route(s), as applicable. The Contractor and the Contracting Officer will sign this survey report upon mutual agreement regarding its accuracy and completeness. Protect those environmental features included in the survey report and any indicated on the drawings, regardless of interference that their preservation may cause to the work under the Contract.

##### 1.5.2 [Regulatory Notifications](#)

Provide regulatory notification requirements in accordance with federal, state and local regulations. In cases where the Government will also provide public notification (such as stormwater permitting), coordinate with the Contracting Officer. Submit copies of regulatory notifications to the Contracting Officer at least 5 days prior to commencement of work activities. Typically, regulatory notifications must be provided for the following (this listing is not all-inclusive): demolition, renovation, NPDES defined site work, construction, removal or use of a permitted air emissions source, and remediation of controlled substances (asbestos,

hazardous waste, lead paint).

#### 1.5.3 Environmental Brief

Attend an environmental brief to be included in the preconstruction meeting. Provide the following information: types, quantities, and use of hazardous materials that will be brought onto the installation; and types and quantities of wastes/wastewater that may be generated during the Contract. Discuss the results of the Preconstruction Survey at this time.

Prior to initiating any work on site, meet with the Contracting Officer and installation Environmental Office to discuss the proposed Environmental Protection Plan (EPP). Develop a mutual understanding relative to the details of environmental protection, including measures for protecting natural and cultural resources, required reports, required permits, permit requirements (such as mitigation measures), and other measures to be taken.

#### 1.5.4 Employee Training Records

Prepare and maintain [Employee Training Records](#) throughout the term of the contract meeting applicable 40 CFR requirements. Provide Employee Training Records in the Environmental Records Binder. Ensure every employee completes a program of classroom instruction or on-the-job training that teaches them to perform their duties in a way that ensures compliance with federal, state and local regulatory requirements for RCRA Large Quantity Generator. Provide a Position Description for each employee, by subcontractor, based on the Davis-Bacon Wage Rate designation or other equivalent method, evaluating the employee's association with hazardous and regulated wastes. Submit these [Employee Training Records](#) to the Contracting Officer at the conclusion of the project, unless otherwise directed.

Train personnel to meet state requirements. Conduct environmental protection/pollution control meetings for personnel prior to commencing construction activities. Contact additional meetings for new personnel and when site conditions change. Include in the training and meeting agenda: methods of detecting and avoiding pollution; familiarization with statutory and contractual pollution standards; installation and care of devices, vegetative covers, and instruments required for monitoring purposes to ensure adequate and continuous environmental protection/pollution control; anticipated hazardous or toxic chemicals or wastes, and other regulated contaminants; recognition and protection of archaeological sites, artifacts, waters of the United States, and endangered species and their habitat that are known to be in the area.

#### 1.5.5 Non-Compliance Notifications

The Contracting Officer will notify the Contractor in writing of any observed noncompliance with federal, state or local environmental laws or regulations, permits, and other elements of the Contractor's EPP. After receipt of such notice, inform the Contracting Officer of the proposed corrective action and take such action when approved by the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer may issue an order stopping all or part of the work until satisfactory corrective action has been taken. FAR 52.242-14 Suspension of Work provides that a suspension, delay, or interruption of work due to the fault or negligence of the Contractor allows for no adjustments to the contract for time extensions or equitable adjustments. In addition to a suspension of work, the Contracting Officer may use additional authorities under the contract or law..



## 1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION PLAN

The purpose of the EPP is to present an overview of known or potential environmental issues that must be considered and addressed during construction. Incorporate construction related objectives and targets from the installation's EMS into the EPP. Include in the EPP measures for protecting natural and cultural resources, required reports, and other measures to be taken. Meet with the Contracting Officer or Contracting Officer Representative to discuss the EPP and develop a mutual understanding relative to the details for environmental protection including measures for protecting natural resources, required reports, and other measures to be taken. Submit the EPP within 15 days after notice to proceed and not less than 10 days before the preconstruction meeting. Revise the EPP throughout the project to include any reporting requirements, changes in site conditions, or contract modifications that change the project scope of work in a way that could have an environmental impact. No requirement in this section will relieve the Contractor of any applicable federal, state, and local environmental protection laws and regulations. During Construction, identify, implement, and submit for approval any additional requirements to be included in the EPP. Maintain the current version onsite.

The EPP includes, but is not limited to, the following elements:

### 1.6.1 General Overview and Purpose

#### 1.6.1.1 Descriptions

A brief description of each specific plan required by environmental permit or elsewhere in this Contract such as contaminant prevention plan, traffic control plan.

#### 1.6.1.2 Duties

The duties and level of authority assigned to the person(s) on the job site who oversee environmental compliance, such as who is responsible for adherence to the EPP, who is responsible for spill cleanup and training personnel on spill response procedures, who is responsible for manifesting hazardous waste to be removed from the site (if applicable), and who is responsible for training the Contractor's environmental protection personnel.

#### 1.6.1.3 Procedures

A copy of any standard or project-specific operating procedures that will be used to effectively manage and protect the environment on the project site.

#### 1.6.1.4 Communications

Communication and training procedures that will be used to convey environmental management requirements to Contractor employees and subcontractors.

#### 1.6.1.5 Contact Information

Emergency contact information contact information (office phone number, cell phone number, and e-mail address).

## 1.6.2 General Site Information

### 1.6.2.1 Drawings

Drawings showing locations of proposed temporary excavations or embankments for haul roads, stream crossings, jurisdictional wetlands, material storage areas, structures, sanitary facilities, storm drains and conveyances, and stockpiles of excess soil.

### 1.6.2.2 Work Area

Work area plan showing the proposed activity in each portion of the area and identify the areas of limited use or nonuse. Include measures for marking the limits of use areas, including methods for protection of features to be preserved within authorized work areas and methods to control runoff and to contain materials on site, and a traffic control plan.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 WASTE MINIMIZATION

Minimize the use of hazardous materials and the generation of waste. Include procedures for pollution prevention/ hazardous waste minimization in the Hazardous Waste Management Section of the EPP. Obtain a copy of the installation's Pollution Prevention/Hazardous Waste Minimization Plan for reference material when preparing this part of the EPP. If no written plan exists, obtain information by contacting the Contracting Officer. Describe the anticipated types of the hazardous materials to be used in the construction when requesting information.

#### 3.1.1 Salvage, Reuse and Recycle

Identify anticipated materials and waste for salvage, reuse, and recycling. Describe actions to promote material reuse, resale or recycling. To the extent practicable, all scrap metal must be sent for reuse or recycling and will not be disposed of in a landfill.

Include the name, physical address, and telephone number of the hauler, if transported by a franchised solid waste hauler. Include the destination and, unless exempted, provide a copy of the state or local permit (cover) or license for recycling.

### 3.2 WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

#### 3.2.1 Waste Determination Documentation

Complete a Waste Determination form (provided at the pre-construction conference) for Contractor-derived wastes to be generated. All potentially hazardous solid waste streams that are not subject to a specific exclusion or exemption from the hazardous waste regulations (e.g. scrap metal, domestic sewage) or subject to special rules, (lead-acid batteries and precious metals) must be characterized in accordance with the requirements of [40 CFR 261](#) or corresponding applicable state or local regulations. Base waste determination on user knowledge of the processes and materials used, and analytical data when necessary. Consult with the Installation

environmental staff for guidance on specific requirements. Attach support documentation to the Waste Determination form. As a minimum, provide a Waste Determination form for the following waste (this listing is not inclusive): oil- and latex -based painting and caulking products, solvents, adhesives, aerosols, petroleum products, and containers of the original materials.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 74 19

CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL  
02/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 273	Standards for Universal Waste Management
49 CFR 173	Shippers - General Requirements for Shipments and Packagings
49 CFR 178	Specifications for Packagings

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Co-mingle

The practice of placing unrelated materials together in a single container, usually for benefits of convenience and speed.

1.2.2 Construction Waste

Waste generated by construction activities, such as scrap materials, damaged or spoiled materials, temporary and expendable construction materials, and other waste generated by the workforce during construction activities.

1.2.3 Demolition Debris/Waste

Waste generated from demolition activities, including minor incidental demolition waste materials generated as a result of Intentional dismantling of all or portions of a building, to include clearing of building contents that have been destroyed or damaged.

1.2.4 Disposal

Depositing waste in a solid waste disposal facility, usually a managed landfill, regulated in the US under the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA).

1.2.5 Diversion

The practice of diverting waste from disposal in a landfill, by means of eliminating or minimizing waste, or reuse of materials.

1.2.6 Final Construction Waste Diversion Report

A written assertion by a material recovery facility operator identifying

constituent materials diverted from disposal, usually including summary tabulations of materials, weight in short-ton.

#### 1.2.7 Recycling

The series of activities, including collection, separation, and processing, by which products or other materials are diverted from the solid waste stream for use in the form of raw materials in the manufacture of new products sold or distributed in commerce, or the reuse of such materials as substitutes for goods made of virgin materials, other than fuel.

#### 1.2.8 Reuse

The use of a product or materials again for the same purpose, in its original form or with little enhancement or change.

#### 1.2.9 Salvage

Usable, salable items derived from buildings undergoing demolition or deconstruction, parts from vehicles, machinery, other equipment, or other components.

#### 1.2.10 Source Separation

The practice of administering and implementing a management strategy to identify and segregate unrelated waste at the first opportunity.

### 1.3 CONSTRUCTION WASTE (INCLUDES DEMOLITION DEBRIS/WASTE)

Divert a minimum of 60 percent by weight of the project [construction waste and demolition debris/waste](#) from the landfill. Follow applicable industry standards in the management of waste. Apply sound environmental principles in the management of waste. (1) Practice efficient waste management when sizing, cutting, and installing products and materials and (2) use all reasonable means to divert construction waste and demolition debris/waste from landfills and incinerators and to facilitate the recycling or reuse of [excess construction materials](#).

### 1.4 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT

Implement a construction waste management program for the project. Take a pro-active, responsible role in the management of construction construction waste, recycling process, disposal of demolition debris/waste, and require all subcontractors, vendors, and suppliers to participate in the construction waste management program. Establish a process for clear tracking, and documentation of construction waste and demolition debris/waste.

#### 1.4.1 Implementation of Construction Waste Management Program

Develop and document how the construction waste management program will be implemented in a construction waste management plan. Submit a Construction Waste Management Plan to the Contracting Officer for approval. Construction waste and demolition debris/waste materials include un-used construction materials not incorporated in the final work, as well as demolition debris/waste materials from demolition activities or deconstruction activities. In the management of waste, consider the availability of viable markets, the condition of materials, the ability to provide material in suitable condition and in a quantity acceptable to

available markets, and time constraints imposed by internal project completion mandates.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

##### SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Construction Waste Management Plan; G

##### SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Final Construction Waste Diversion Report;

#### 1.6 MEETINGS

Conduct Construction Waste Management meetings. After award of the Contract and prior to commencement of work, schedule and conduct a meeting with the Contracting Officer to discuss the proposed construction waste management plan and to develop a mutual understanding relative to the management of the construction waste management program and how waste diversion requirements will be met.

At a minimum, discuss and document waste management goals at following meetings:

- a. Preconstruction meeting.
- b. Regular Quality Control meetings.
- c. Work safety meeting (if applicable).

#### 1.7 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

Submit Construction Waste Management Plan within 15 days after notice to proceed. Revise and resubmit Construction Waste Management Plan until it receives final approval from the Contracting Officer, in order for construction to begin. Manage demolition debris/waste or deconstruction materials in accordance with the approved construction waste management plan.

An approved construction waste management plan will not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for compliance with applicable environmental regulations or meeting project cumulative waste diversion requirement. Ensure all subcontractors receive a copy of the approved Construction Waste Management Plan. The plan demonstrates how to meet the project waste diversion requirement. Also, include the following in the plan:

- a. Identify the names of individuals responsible for waste management and waste management tracking, along with roles and responsibilities on the project..
- b. Actions that will be taken to reduce solid waste generation, including coordination with subcontractors to ensure awareness and participation.

- c. Description of the regular meetings to be held to address waste management.
- d. Description of the specific approaches to be used in recycling/reuse of the various materials generated, including the areas on site and equipment to be used for processing, sorting, and temporary storage of materials.
- e. Name of landfill and/or incinerator to be used.
- f. Identification of local and regional re-use programs, including non-profit organizations such as schools, local housing agencies, and organization that accept used materials such as material exchange networks and resale stores. Include the name, location, phone number for each re-use facility identified, and provide a copy of the permit or license for each facility.
- g. List of specific materials, by type and quantity, that will be salvaged for resale, salvaged and reused on the current project, salvaged and stored for reuse on a future project, or recycled. Identify the recycling facilities by name, address, and phone number.
- h. Identification of materials that cannot be recycled or reused with an explanation or justification, to be approved by the Contracting Officer.
- i. Description of the means by which any materials identified in item (g) above will be protected from contamination.
- j. Description of the means of transportation of the recyclable materials (whether materials will be site-separated and self-hauled to designated centers, or whether mixed materials will be collected by a waste hauler and removed from the site).
- k. Copy of training plan for subcontractors and other services to prevent contamination by co-mingling materials identified for diversion and waste materials.
- l. Detailed plan and distribution of waste diversion between buildings, when project is a part of a campus.
- m. Facilities or subcontractors offering construction waste transport on-site or off-site must ensure that proper shipping orders, bill of lading, manifests, or other shipping documents containing waste diversion information meet requirements of 40 CFR 273 Universal Waste Management, 49 CFR 173 Shippers - General Requirements for Shipments and Packagings, and 49 CFR 178 Specifications for Packaging. Individuals signing manifests or other shipping documents should meet the minimum training requirements.
- n. List each supplier who deliver construction materials, in bulk, or package products in returnable containers or returnable packaging, or have take-back programs. List each program and the applicable material to actively monitor and track to assist in meeting waste diversion requirements on the project.

Distribute copies of the waste management plan to each subcontractor, Quality Control Manager, and the Contracting Officer.



## 1.8 RECORDS (DOCUMENTATION)

### 1.8.1 General

Maintain records to document the types and quantities of waste generated and diverted through re-use, recycling and/or sale to third parties; through disposal to a landfill or incinerator facility. Provide explanations for any materials not recycled, reused or sold. Collect and retain manifests, weight tickets, sales receipts, and invoices specifically identifying diverted project waste materials or disposed materials.

### 1.8.2 Accumulated

Maintain a running record of materials generated and diverted from landfill disposal, including accumulated diversion rates for the project. Make records available to the Contracting Officer during construction or incidental demolition activities. Provide a copy of the diversion records to the Contracting Officer upon completion of the construction, incidental demolitions or minor deconstruction activities.

## 1.9 REPORTS

### 1.9.1 General

Maintain current construction waste diversion information on site for periodic inspection by the Contracting Officer. Include in the quarterly reports, annual reports and final reports: the project name, contract information, information for waste generated, diverted and disposed of for the current reporting period and show cumulative totals for the project. Reports must identify quantities of waste by type and disposal method. Also include in each report, supporting documentation to include manifests, weigh tickets, receipts, and invoices specifically identifying the project and waste material type and weighted sum.

### 1.10 FINAL CONSTRUCTION WASTE DIVERSION REPORT

A Final Construction Waste Diversion Report is required at the end of the project. Provide [Final Construction Waste Diversion Report](#) 60 days prior to the Beneficial Occupancy Date (BOD).

### 1.11 DISPOSAL

Control accumulation of waste materials and trash. Recycle or dispose of collected materials off-site at intervals approved by the Contracting Officer and in compliance with waste management procedures as described in the waste management plan. Except as otherwise specified in other sections of the specifications, dispose of in accordance with the following:

#### 1.11.1 Reuse

Give first consideration to reusing construction and demolition materials as a disposition strategy. Recover for reuse materials, products, and components as described in the approved construction waste management plan. Coordinate with the Contracting Officer to identify onsite reuse opportunities or material sales or donation available through Government resale or donation programs. Sale of recovered materials is not allowed on the Installation.

1.11.2 Recycle

Recycle non-hazardous construction and demolition/debris materials that are not suitable for reuse. Track rejection of contaminated recyclable materials by the recycling facility. Rejected recyclables materials will not be counted as a percentage of diversion calculation. Recycle all fluorescent lamps, HID lamps, mercury (Hg) -containing thermostats and ampoules, and PCBs-containing ballasts and electrical components as directed by the Contracting Officer. Do not crush lamps on site as this creates a hazardous waste stream with additional handling requirements.

1.11.3 Waste

Dispose by landfill or incineration only those waste materials with no practical use, economic benefit, or recycling opportunity.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not used.           -- End of Section --

SECTION 01 78 00

CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS  
05/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

ERDC/ITL TR-12-1 (2015) A/E/C Graphics Standard, Release 2.0

ERDC/ITL TR-12-6 (2015) A/E/C CAD Standard - Release 6.0

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 1-300-08 (2009, with Change 2, 2011) Criteria for Transfer and Acceptance of DoD Real Property

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 As-Built Drawings

As-built drawings are the marked-up drawings, maintained by the Contractor on-site, that depict actual conditions and deviations from the Contract Documents. These deviations and additions may result from coordination required by, but not limited to: contract modifications; official responses to submitted Requests for Information (RFI's); direction from the Contracting Officer; design that is the responsibility of the Contractor, and differing site conditions. Maintain the as-builts throughout construction as red-lined hard copies on site or red-lined PDF files. These files serve as the basis for the creation of the record drawings.

1.2.2 Record Drawings

The record drawings are the final compilation of actual conditions reflected in the as-built drawings.

1.3 SOURCE DRAWING FILES

Request the full set of electronic drawings, in the source format, for Record Drawing preparation, after award and at least 30 days prior to required use.

1.3.1 Terms and Conditions

Data contained on these electronic files must not be used for any purpose other than as a convenience in the preparation of construction drawings and data for the referenced project. Any other use or reuse shall be at the sole risk of the Contractor and without liability or legal exposure to the Government. The Contractor must make no claim and waives to the fullest

extent permitted by law, any claim or cause of action of any nature against the Government, its agents or sub consultants that may arise out of or in connection with the use of these electronic files. The Contractor must, to the fullest extent permitted by law, indemnify and hold the Government harmless against all damages, liabilities or costs, including reasonable attorney's fees and defense costs, arising out of or resulting from the use of these electronic files.

These electronic CAD drawing files are not construction documents. Differences may exist between the CAD files and the corresponding construction documents. The Government makes no representation regarding the accuracy or completeness of the electronic CAD files, nor does it make representation to the compatibility of these files with the Contractor hardware or software. In the event that a conflict arises between the signed and sealed construction documents prepared by the Government and the furnished Source drawing files, the signed and sealed construction documents govern. The Contractor is responsible for determining if any conflict exists. Use of these Source Drawing files does not relieve the Contractor of duty to fully comply with the contract documents, including and without limitation, the need to check, confirm and coordinate the work of all contractors for the project. If the Contractor uses, duplicates or modifies these electronic source drawing files for use in producing construction drawings and data related to this contract, remove all previous indicia of ownership (seals, logos, signatures, initials and dates).

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

##### SD-03 Product Data

Warranty Management Plan

Warranty Tags

Spare Parts Data

##### SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Posted Instructions

##### SD-11 Closeout Submittals

As-Built Drawings; G

As-Built Record of Equipment and Materials

Final Approved Shop Drawings

Construction Contract Specifications

Interim DD FORM 1354; G

Checklist for DD FORM 1354; G

## 1.5 SPARE PARTS DATA

Submit two copies of the Spare Parts Data list.

- a. Indicate manufacturer's name, part number, nomenclature, and stock level required for maintenance and repair. List those items that may be standard to the normal maintenance of the system.

## 1.6 QUALITY CONTROL

Additions and corrections to the contract drawings must be equal in quality and detail to that of the originals. Line colors, line weights, lettering, layering conventions, and symbols must be the same as the original line colors, line weights, lettering, layering conventions, and symbols.

## 1.7 WARRANTY MANAGEMENT

### 1.7.1 Warranty Management Plan

Develop a warranty management plan which contains information relevant to FAR 52.246-21 Warranty of Construction. At least 30 days before the planned pre-warranty conference, submit one set of the warranty management plan. Include within the warranty management plan all required actions and documents to assure that the Government receives all warranties to which it is entitled. The plan narrative must contain sufficient detail to render it suitable for use by future maintenance and repair personnel, whether tradesmen, or of engineering background, not necessarily familiar with this contract. The term "status" as indicated below must include due date and whether item has been submitted or was accomplished. Submit warranty information, made available during the construction phase, to the Contracting Officer for approval prior to each monthly pay estimate. Assemble approved information in a binder and turn over to the Government upon acceptance of the work. The construction warranty period must begin on the date of project acceptance and continue for the full product warranty period. Conduct a joint 4 month and 9 month warranty inspection, measured from time of acceptance; with the Contractor, Contracting Officer and the Customer Representative. The warranty management plan must include, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Roles and responsibilities of personnel associated with the warranty process, including points of contact and telephone numbers within the organizations of the Contractors, subcontractors, manufacturers or suppliers involved.
- b. For each warranty, the name, address, telephone number, and email of each of the guarantor's representatives nearest to the project location.
- c. A list and status of delivery of Certificates of Warranty for extended warranty items, including roofs, HVAC balancing, pumps, motors, transformers, and for commissioned systems, such as fire protection and alarm systems, sprinkler systems, and lightning protection systems.
- d. As-Built Record of Equipment and Materials list for each warranted equipment, item, feature of construction or system indicating:
  - (1) Name of item.
  - (2) Model and serial numbers.
  - (3) Location where installed.

- (4) Name and phone numbers of manufacturers or suppliers.
  - (5) Names, addresses and telephone numbers of sources of spare parts.
  - (6) Warranties and terms of warranty. Include one-year overall warranty of construction, including the starting date of warranty of construction. Items which have extended warranties must be indicated with separate warranty expiration dates.
  - (7) Cross-reference to warranty certificates as applicable.
  - (8) Starting point and duration of warranty period.
  - (9) Summary of maintenance procedures required to continue the warranty in force.
  - (10) Cross-reference to specific pertinent Operation and Maintenance manuals.
  - (11) Organization, names and phone numbers of persons to call for warranty service.
  - (12) Typical response time and repair time expected for various warranted equipment.
- e. The plans for attendance at the 4 and 9 month post-construction warranty inspections conducted by the Government.
- f. Procedure and status of tagging of equipment covered by extended warranties.
- g. Copies of [instructions](#) to be posted near selected pieces of equipment where operation is critical for warranty or safety reasons.

#### 1.7.2 Performance Bond

The Performance Bond must remain effective throughout the construction period.

- a. In the event the Contractor fails to commence and diligently pursue any construction warranty work required, the Contracting Officer will have the work performed by others, and after completion of the work, will charge the remaining construction warranty funds of expenses incurred by the Government while performing the work, including, but not limited to administrative expenses.
- b. In the event sufficient funds are not available to cover the construction warranty work performed by the Government at the Contractor's expense, the Contracting Officer will have the right to recoup expenses from the bonding company.
- c. Following oral or written notification of required construction warranty repair work, respond in a timely manner. Written verification will follow oral instructions. Failure to respond will be cause for the Contracting Officer to proceed against the Contractor.

#### 1.7.3 Pre-Warranty Conference

Prior to contract completion, and at a time designated by the Contracting Officer, meet with the Contracting Officer to develop a mutual understanding with respect to the requirements of this section. At this meeting, establish and review communication procedures for Contractor notification of construction warranty defects, priorities with respect to the type of defect, reasonable time required for Contractor response, and other details deemed necessary by the Contracting Officer for the execution of the construction warranty. In connection with these requirements and at the time of the Contractor's quality control completion inspection, furnish

the name, telephone number and address of a licensed and bonded company which is authorized to initiate and pursue construction warranty work action on behalf of the Contractor. This point of contact must be located within the local service area of the warranted construction, be continuously available, and be responsive to Government inquiry on warranty work action and status. This requirement does not relieve the Contractor of any of its responsibilities in connection with other portions of this provision.

#### 1.7.4 Warranty Tags

At the time of installation, tag each warranted item with a durable, oil and water resistant tag approved by the Contracting Officer. Attach each tag with a copper wire and spray with a silicone waterproof coating. Also, submit two record copies of the warranty tags showing the layout and design. The date of acceptance and the QC signature must remain blank until the project is accepted for beneficial occupancy. Show the following information on the tag.

Type of product/material	
Model number	
Serial number	
Contract number	
Warranty period from/to	
Inspector's signature	
Construction Contractor	
Address	
Telephone number	
Warranty contact	
Address	
Telephone number	
Warranty response time priority code	
WARNING - PROJECT PERSONNEL TO PERFORM ONLY OPERATIONAL MAINTENANCE DURING THE WARRANTY PERIOD.	

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

Prepare the CAD drawing files in format compatible with a Windows 7 operating system.

#### 2.1.1 Additional Drawings

If additional drawings are required, prepare them using the specified electronic file format applying the same graphic standards specified for original drawings. The title block and drawing border to be used for any new final record drawings must be identical to that used on the contract drawings.

##### 2.1.1.1 Sheet Numbers and File Names

If a sheet needs to be added between two sequential sheets, append a Supplemental Drawing Designator in accordance with [ERDC/ITL TR-12-6](#) Adding a drawing sheet, and [ERDC/ITL TR-12-1](#) Adding or deleting drawing sheets and index sheet procedures.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 AS-BUILT DRAWINGS

Provide and maintain two black line print copies of the PDF contract drawings for As-Built Drawings. Maintain the as-builts throughout construction as red-lined hard copies on site or red-lined PDF files. Submit As-Built Drawings 30 days prior to Beneficial Occupance Date (BOD).

#### 3.1.1 Markup Guidelines

Make comments and markup the drawings complete without reference to letters, memos, or materials that are not part of the As-Built drawing. Show what was changed, how it was changed, where item(s) were relocated and change related details. These working as-built markup prints must be neat, legible and accurate as follows:

- a. Provide a legend of the colors used.

- a. Add and denote any additional equipment or material facilities, service lines, incorporated under As-Built Revisions if not already shown in legend.
- b. Use frequent written explanations on markup drawings to describe changes. Do not totally rely on graphic means to convey the revision.
- c. Use legible lettering and precise and clear digital values when marking prints. Clarify ambiguities concerning the nature and application of change involved.
- d. Wherever a revision is made, also make changes to related section views, details, legend, profiles, plans and elevation views, schedules, notes and call out designations, and mark accordingly to avoid conflicting data on all other sheets.
- e. For deletions, cross out all features, data and captions that relate to that revision.
- f. For changes on small-scale drawings and in restricted areas, provide



large-scale inserts, with leaders to the applicable location.

- g. Indicate one of the following when attaching a print or sketch to a markup print:
  - 1) Add an entire drawing to contract drawings
  - 2) Change the contract drawing to show
  - 3) Provided for reference only to further detail the initial design.
- h. Incorporate all shop and fabrication drawings into the markup drawings.

### 3.2 FINAL APPROVED SHOP DRAWINGS

Submit final approved project shop drawings 30 days after transfer of the completed facility.

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT SPECIFICATIONS

Submit final PDF file record construction contract specifications, including revisions thereto, 30 days after transfer of the completed facility.

### 3.4 CLEANUP

Leave premises "broom clean." Clean interior and exterior glass surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains and foreign substances; polish transparent and glossy surfaces; vacuum carpeted and soft surfaces. Clean equipment and fixtures to a sanitary condition. Clean filters of operating equipment. Clean debris from roofs, gutters, downspouts and drainage systems. Sweep paved areas and rake clean landscaped areas. Remove waste and surplus materials, rubbish and construction facilities from the site..

### 3.5 REAL PROPERTY RECORD

Near the completion of Project, but a minimum of 60 days prior to final acceptance of the work, complete, update draft DD FORM 1354 attached to this section, and submit an accounting of all installed property with Interim DD FORM 1354. Include any additional assets, improvements, and alterations from the Draft DD FORM 1354. Contact the Contracting Officer for any project specific information necessary to complete the DD FORM 1354. Refer to UFC 1-300-08 for instruction on completing the DD FORM 1354.

Submit the completed Checklist for DD FORM 1354 of Installed Building Equipment items. Attach this list to the updated DD FORM 1354.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 41 00

DEMOLITION

05/10, CHG 2: 02/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)

AASHTO M 145 (1991; R 2012) Standard Specification for  
Classification of Soils and Soil-Aggregate  
Mixtures for Highway Construction Purposes

AASHTO T 180 (2017) Standard Method of Test for  
Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using  
a 4.54-kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457-mm  
(18-in.) Drop

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY PROFESSIONALS (ASSP)

ASSP A10.6 (2006) Safety & Health Program  
Requirements for Demolition Operations -  
American National Standard for  
Construction and Demolition Operations

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1 (2014) Safety and Health Requirements  
Manual

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 61 National Emission Standards for Hazardous  
Air Pollutants

1.2 PROJECT DESCRIPTION

1.2.1 Definitions

1.2.1.1 Demolition

Demolition is the process of wrecking or taking out any load-supporting structural member of a facility together with any related handling and disposal operations.

1.2.1.2 Deconstruction

Deconstruction is the process of taking apart a facility with the primary goal of preserving the value of all useful building materials.

#### 1.2.1.3 Demolition Plan

Demolition Plan is the planned steps and processes for managing demolition activities and identifying the required sequencing activities and disposal mechanisms.

#### 1.2.1.4 Deconstruction Plan

Deconstruction Plan is the planned steps and processes for dismantling all or portions of a structure or assembly, to include managing sequencing activities, storage, re-installation activities, salvage and disposal mechanisms.

#### 1.2.2 Demolition/Deconstruction Plan

Prepare a [Demolition Plan](#) and submit proposed demolition, and removal procedures for approval before work is started. Include in the plan procedures for careful removal and disposition of materials specified to be salvaged, coordination with other work in progress, a disconnection schedule of utility services, a detailed description of methods and equipment to be used for each operation and of the sequence of operations. Coordinate with Waste Management Plan in accordance with Section [01 74 19](#) CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL. Provide procedures for safe conduct of the work in accordance with [EM 385-1-1](#). Plan shall be approved by Contracting Officer prior to work beginning.

#### 1.2.3 General Requirements

Do not begin demolition or deconstruction until authorization is received from the Contracting Officer. Remove rubbish and debris from the project site; do not allow accumulations on airfield pavements. The work includes demolition, , salvage of identified items and materials, and removal of resulting rubbish and debris. Remove rubbish and debris from Government property daily, unless otherwise directed. Store materials that cannot be removed daily in areas specified by the Contracting Officer. In the interest of occupational safety and health, perform the work in accordance with [EM 385-1-1](#), Section 23, Demolition, and other applicable Sections.

#### 1.3 ITEMS TO REMAIN IN PLACE

Take necessary precautions to avoid damage to existing items to remain in place, to be reused, or to remain the property of the Government. Repair or replace damaged items as approved by the Contracting Officer. Coordinate the work of this section with all other work indicated. Construct and maintain shoring, bracing, and supports as required. Ensure that structural elements are not overloaded. Increase structural supports or add new supports as may be required as a result of any cutting, removal, deconstruction, or demolition work performed under this contract. Do not overload pavements to remain. Provide new supports and reinforcement for existing construction weakened by demolition, deconstruction, or removal work. Repairs, reinforcement, or structural replacement require approval by the Contracting Officer prior to performing such work.

##### 1.3.1 Existing Construction Limits and Protection

Do not disturb existing construction beyond the extent indicated or necessary for installation of new construction. Provide temporary shoring and bracing for support of building components to prevent settlement or other movement. Provide protective measures to control accumulation and

migration of dust and dirt in all work areas. Remove dust, dirt, and debris from work areas daily.

#### 1.3.2 Weather Protection

For portions of the building to remain, protect building interior and materials and equipment from the weather at all times. Where removal of existing roofing is necessary to accomplish work, have materials and workmen ready to provide adequate and temporary covering of exposed areas.

#### 1.3.3 Trees

Protect trees within the project site which might be damaged during demolition or deconstruction, and which are indicated to be left in place, by a 6 foot high fence. Erect and secure fence a minimum of 5 feet from the trunk of individual trees or follow the outer perimeter of branches or clumps of trees. Replace any tree designated to remain that is damaged during the work under this contract with like-kind or as approved by the Contracting Officer.

#### 1.3.4 Utility Service

Maintain existing utilities indicated to stay in service and protect against damage during demolition and deconstruction operations. Prior to start of work, utilities serving each area of alteration or removal will be shut off by the Government and disconnected and sealed by the Contractor .

#### 1.3.5 Facilities

Protect electrical and mechanical services and utilities. Where removal of existing utilities and pavement is specified or indicated, provide approved barricades, temporary covering of exposed areas, and temporary services or connections for electrical and mechanical utilities. Floors, roofs, walls, columns, pilasters, and other structural components that are designed and constructed to stand without lateral support or shoring, and are determined to be in stable condition, must remain standing without additional bracing, shoring, or lateral support until demolished or deconstructed, unless directed otherwise by the Contracting Officer. Ensure that no elements determined to be unstable are left unsupported and place and secure bracing, shoring, or lateral supports as may be required as a result of any cutting, removal, deconstruction, or demolition work performed under this contract.

#### 1.4 BURNING

The use of burning at the project site for the disposal of refuse and debris will not be permitted . Where burning is permitted, adhere to federal, state, and local regulations.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Demolition Plan;

## Existing Conditions

### SD-07 Certificates

#### Notification;

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Submit timely [notification](#) of demolition projects to Federal, State, regional, and local authorities in accordance with [40 CFR 61](#), Subpart M. Notify the Regional Office of the United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) and the Contracting Officer in writing 10 working days prior to the commencement of work in accordance with [40 CFR 61](#), Subpart M. Comply with federal, state, and local hauling and disposal regulations. In addition to the requirements of the "Contract Clauses," conform to the safety requirements contained in [ASSP A10.6](#). Comply with the Environmental Protection Agency requirements specified. Use of explosives will not be permitted.

##### 1.6.1 Dust and Debris Control

Prevent the spread of dust and debris on airfield pavements and avoid the creation of a nuisance or hazard in the surrounding area. Do not use water if it results in hazardous or objectionable conditions such as, but not limited to, ice, flooding, or pollution. Sweep pavements as often as necessary to control the spread of debris that may result in foreign object damage potential to aircraft.

#### 1.7 PROTECTION

##### 1.7.1 Traffic Control Signs

a. Where pedestrian and driver safety is endangered in the area of removal work, use traffic barricades with flashing lights. Anchor barricades in a manner to prevent displacement by wind, jet or prop blast. Notify the Contracting Officer prior to beginning such work.

##### 1.7.2 Protection of Personnel

Before, during and after the demolition work continuously evaluate the condition of the structure being demolished and take immediate action to protect all personnel working in and around the project site. No area, section, or component of floors, roofs, walls, columns, pilasters, or other structural element will be allowed to be left standing without sufficient bracing, shoring, or lateral support to prevent collapse or failure while workmen remove debris or perform other work in the immediate area.

#### 1.8 RELOCATIONS

Perform the removal and reinstallation of relocated items as indicated with workmen skilled in the trades involved. Repair or replace items to be relocated which are damaged by the Contractor with new undamaged items as approved by the Contracting Officer.

#### 1.9 EXISTING CONDITIONS

Before beginning any demolition or deconstruction work, survey the site and examine the drawings and specifications to determine the extent of the

work. Record existing conditions in the presence of the Contracting Officer showing the condition of structures and other facilities adjacent to areas of alteration or removal. Photographs sized 4 inch will be acceptable as a record of existing conditions. Include in the record the elevation of the top of foundation walls, finish floor elevations, possible conflicting electrical conduits, plumbing lines, alarms systems, the location and extent of existing cracks and other damage and description of surface conditions that exist prior to before starting work. It is the Contractor's responsibility to verify and document all required outages which will be required during the course of work, and to note these outages on the record document. Submit survey results.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FILL MATERIAL

- a. Comply with excavating, backfilling, and compacting procedures for soils used as backfill material to fill basements, voids, depressions or excavations resulting from demolition or deconstruction of structures.
- b. Fill material shall conform to the definition of satisfactory soil material as defined in AASHTO M 145, Soil Classification Groups A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5 and A-3. In addition, fill material shall be free from roots and other organic matter, trash, debris, frozen materials, and stones larger than 2 inches in any dimension.
- c. Proposed fill material must be sampled and tested by an approved soil testing laboratory, as follows:

Soil classification	AASHTO M 145
Moisture-density relations	AASHTO T 180, Method B or D

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXISTING FACILITIES TO BE REMOVED

Inspect and evaluate existing structures onsite for reuse. Existing construction scheduled to be removed for reuse shall be disassembled. Dismantled and removed materials are to be separated, set aside, and prepared as specified, and stored or delivered to a collection point for reuse, remanufacture, recycling, or other disposal, as specified. Materials shall be designated for reuse onsite whenever possible.

#### 3.1.1 Utilities and Related Equipment

##### 3.1.1.1 General Requirements

Do not interrupt existing utilities serving occupied or used facilities, except when authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied and used by the Government except when approved in writing and then only after temporary utility services have been approved and provided. Do not begin demolition or deconstruction work until all utility disconnections have been made. Shut off and cap utilities for future use, as indicated.

### 3.1.1.2 Disconnecting Existing Utilities

Remove existing utilities , as indicated and terminate in a manner conforming to the nationally recognized code covering the specific utility and approved by the Contracting Officer. When utility lines are encountered but are not indicated on the drawings, notify the Contracting Officer prior to further work in that area. Remove meters and related equipment and deliver to a location in accordance with instructions of the Contracting Officer.

### 3.1.2 Paving and Slabs

Remove sawcut concrete and asphaltic concrete paving and slabs as indicated to a depth of 10 inches below existing adjacent grade. Provide neat sawcuts at limits of pavement removal as indicated. Pavement and slabs designated to be recycled and utilized in this project shall be moved, ground and stored as directed by the Contracting Officer. Pavement and slabs not to be used in this project shall be removed from the Installation at Contractor's expense.

### 3.1.3 Concrete

Saw concrete along straight lines to a depth of a minimum 2 inch. Make each cut in walls perpendicular to the face and in alignment with the cut in the opposite face. Break out the remainder of the concrete provided that the broken area is concealed in the finished work, and the remaining concrete is sound. At locations where the broken face cannot be concealed, grind smooth or saw cut entirely through the concrete.

### 3.1.4 Patching

Where removals leave holes and damaged surfaces exposed in the finished work, patch and repair these holes and damaged surfaces to match adjacent finished surfaces, using on-site materials when available. Where new work is to be applied to existing surfaces, perform removals and patching in a manner to produce surfaces suitable for receiving new work. Finished surfaces of patched area shall be flush with the adjacent existing surface and shall match the existing adjacent surface as closely as possible as to texture and finish.

## 3.2 CONCURRENT EARTH-MOVING OPERATIONS

Do not begin excavation, filling, and other earth-moving operations that are sequential to demolition or deconstruction work in areas occupied by structures to be demolished or deconstructed until all demolition and deconstruction in the area has been completed and debris removed. Fill holes, open basements and other hazardous openings.

## 3.3 DISPOSITION OF MATERIAL

### 3.3.1 Title to Materials

Except for salvaged items specified in related Sections, and for materials or equipment scheduled for salvage, all materials and equipment removed and not reused or salvaged, shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from Government property. Title to materials resulting from demolition and deconstruction, and materials and equipment to be removed, is vested in the Contractor upon approval by the Contracting Officer of the Contractor's demolition, deconstruction, and removal



procedures, and authorization by the Contracting Officer to begin demolition and deconstruction. The Government will not be responsible for the condition or loss of, or damage to, such property after contract award. Showing for sale or selling materials and equipment on site is prohibited.

### 3.3.2 Salvaged Materials and Equipment

Remove materials and equipment that are listed in the Demolition Plan to be removed by the Contractor and that are to remain the property of the Government, and deliver to a storage site .

- a. Salvage items and material to the maximum extent possible.
- b. Store all materials salvaged for the Contractor as approved by the Contracting Officer and remove from Government property before completion of the contract. Coordinate the salvaged materials with tracking requirements in accordance with Section 01 74 19 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL. Capture salvaged materials in the diversion calculations for the project.
- c. Remove salvaged items to remain the property of the Government in a manner to prevent damage, and packed or crated to protect the items from damage while in storage or during shipment. Items damaged during removal or storage must be repaired or replaced to match existing items. Properly identify the contents of containers.

### 3.3.3 Unsalvageable and Non-Recyclable Material

Dispose of unsalvageable and non-recyclable noncombustible material in the disposal area **directed by contracting officer**. The fill in the disposal area shall remain below elevation and after disposal is completed, the disposal area shall be uniformly graded to drain. Dispose of unsalvageable and non-recyclable combustible material **in the sanitary fill area located off the site**.

### 3.4 CLEANUP

Remove debris and rubbish from basement and similar excavations. Remove and transport the debris in a manner that prevents spillage on streets or adjacent areas. Apply local regulations regarding hauling and disposal.

### 3.5 DISPOSAL OF REMOVED MATERIALS

#### 3.5.1 Regulation of Removed Materials

Dispose of debris, rubbish, scrap, and other nonsalvageable materials resulting from removal operations with all applicable federal, state and local regulations as contractually specified in the Waste Management Plan . Storage of removed materials on the project site is prohibited.

#### 3.5.2 Removal to Spoil Areas on Government Property

Transport noncombustible materials removed from demolition and deconstruction structures to designated spoil areas on Government property.

#### 3.5.3 Removal from Government Property

Transport waste materials removed from demolished and deconstructed

structures, except waste soil, from Government property for legal disposal. Dispose of waste soil as directed.

### 3.6 REUSE OF SALVAGED ITEMS

Recondition salvaged materials and equipment designated for reuse before installation. Replace items damaged during removal and salvage operations or restore them as necessary to usable condition.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 03 30 00

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

02/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE (ACI)

ACI 117	(2010; Errata 2011) Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials and Commentary
ACI 121R	(2008) Guide for Concrete Construction Quality Systems in Conformance with ISO 9001
ACI 301	(2016) Specifications for Structural Concrete
ACI 302.1R	(2015) Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction
ACI 304.2R	(2017) Guide to Placing Concrete by Pumping Methods
ACI 304R	(2000; R 2009) Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete
ACI 305.1	(2014) Specification for Hot Weather Concreting
ACI 305R	(2010) Guide to Hot Weather Concreting
ACI 306.1	(1990; R 2002) Standard Specification for Cold Weather Concreting
ACI 306R	(2016) Guide to Cold Weather Concreting
ACI 308.1	(2011) Specification for Curing Concrete
ACI SP-2	(2007; Abstract: 10th Edition) ACI Manual of Concrete Inspection
ACI SP-15	(2011) Field Reference Manual: Standard Specifications for Structural Concrete ACI 301-05 with Selected ACI References

AMERICAN HARDBOARD ASSOCIATION (AHA)

AHA A135.4	(1995; R 2004) Basic Hardboard
------------	--------------------------------

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.4/D1.4M (2011) Structural Welding Code -  
Reinforcing Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A184/A184M (2019) Standard Specification for Welded  
Deformed Steel Bar Mats for Concrete  
Reinforcement

ASTM A615/A615M (2020) Standard Specification for Deformed  
and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete  
Reinforcement

ASTM A934/A934M (2016) Standard Specification for  
Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Steel  
Reinforcing Bars

ASTM A955/A955M (2020c) Standard Specification for  
Deformed and Plain Stainless-Steel Bars  
for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM A970/A970M (2018) Standard Specification for Headed  
Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM A1044/A1044M (2016a) Standard Specification for Steel  
Stud Assemblies for Shear Reinforcement of  
Concrete

ASTM A1064/A1064M (2017) Standard Specification for  
Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire  
Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for  
Concrete

ASTM C31/C31M (2019a) Standard Practice for Making and  
Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field

ASTM C33/C33M (2018) Standard Specification for Concrete  
Aggregates

ASTM C39/C39M (2020) Standard Test Method for  
Compressive Strength of Cylindrical  
Concrete Specimens

ASTM C42/C42M (2020) Standard Test Method for Obtaining  
and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams  
of Concrete

ASTM C78/C78M (2018) Standard Test Method for Flexural  
Strength of Concrete (Using Simple Beam  
with Third-Point Loading)

ASTM C94/C94M (2020) Standard Specification for  
Ready-Mixed Concrete

ASTM C143/C143M (2015) Standard Test Method for Slump of  
Hydraulic-Cement Concrete

ASTM C150/C150M	(2020) Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C172/C172M	(2017) Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete
ASTM C173/C173M	(2016) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method
ASTM C231/C231M	(2017a) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
ASTM C260/C260M	(2010a; R 2016) Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C311/C311M	(2018) Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Fly Ash or Natural Pozzolans for Use in Portland-Cement Concrete
ASTM C330/C330M	(2017a) Standard Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete
ASTM C494/C494M	(2019) Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C552	(2017; E 2018) Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation
ASTM C578	(2019) Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
ASTM C591	(2019a) Standard Specification for Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation
ASTM C595/C595M	(2020) Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements
ASTM C618	(2019) Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete
ASTM C803/C803M	(2018) Standard Test Method for Penetration Resistance of Hardened Concrete
ASTM C845/C845M	(2018) Standard Specification for Expansive Hydraulic Cement
ASTM C873/C873M	(2015) Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Concrete Cylinders Cast in Place in Cylindrical Molds
ASTM C900	(2015) Standard Test Method for Pullout Strength of Hardened Concrete
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for

Elastomeric Joint Sealants

ASTM C989/C989M	(2018a) Standard Specification for Slag Cement for Use in Concrete and Mortars
ASTM C1017/C1017M	(2013; E 2015) Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Use in Producing Flowing Concrete
ASTM C1074	(2011) Standard Practice for Estimating Concrete Strength by the Maturity Method
ASTM C1077	(2017) Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation
ASTM C1107/C1107M	(2020) Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink)
ASTM C1116/C1116M	(2010a; R 2015) Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Concrete
ASTM C1157/C1157M	(2020) Standard Performance Specification for Hydraulic Cement
ASTM C1218/C1218M	(2017) Standard Test Method for Water-Soluble Chloride in Mortar and Concrete
ASTM C1260	(2014) Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Aggregates (Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM C1293	(2008; R 2015) Standard Test Method for Determination of Length Change of Concrete Due to Alkali-Silica Reaction
ASTM C1567	(2013) Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali-Silica Reactivity of Combinations of Cementitious Materials and Aggregate (Accelerated Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM C1602/C1602M	(2018) Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D1751	(2004; E 2013; R 2013) Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
ASTM D2628	(1991; R 2016) Standard Specification for Preformed Polychloroprene Elastomeric Joint Seals for Concrete Pavements
ASTM D2835	(1989; R 2017) Standard Specification for Lubricant for Installation of Preformed

Compression Seals in Concrete Pavements

ASTM D5759	(2012; R 2020) Characterization of Coal Fly Ash and Clean Coal Combustion Fly Ash for Potential Uses
ASTM D6690	(2015) Standard Specification for Joint and Crack Sealants, Hot Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements
ASTM E96/E96M	(2016) Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
ASTM E329	(2020) Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection, Testing, or Special Inspection
ASTM E1643	(2018a) Standard Practice for Selection, Design, Installation, and Inspection of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs
ASTM E1745	(2017) Standard Specification for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill under Concrete Slabs

CONCRETE REINFORCING STEEL INSTITUTE (CRSI)

CRSI 10MSP	(2018) Manual of Standard Practice
CRSI RB4.1	(2016) Supports for Reinforcement Used in Concrete

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)

NIST PS 1	(2009) DOC Voluntary Product Standard PS 1-07, Structural Plywood
-----------	---

U.S. GREEN BUILDING COUNCIL (USGBC)

LEED NC	(2009) Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design(tm) New Construction Rating System
---------	---

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- a. "Cementitious material" as used herein must include all portland cement, pozzolan, fly ash, and slag cement.
- b. "Exposed to public view" means situated so that it can be seen from eye level from a public location after completion of the building. A public location is accessible to persons not responsible for operation or maintenance of the building.
- c. "Chemical admixtures" are materials in the form of powder or fluids that are added to the concrete to give it certain characteristics not obtainable with plain concrete mixes.
- d. "Supplementary cementing materials" (SCM) include coal fly ash, slag

cement, natural or calcined pozzolans, and ultra-fine coal ash when used in such proportions to replace the portland cement that result in improvement to sustainability and durability and reduced cost.

- e. "Design strength" ( $f'_c$ ) is the specified compressive strength of concrete at time(s) specified in this section to meet structural design criteria.
- f. "Mass Concrete" is any concrete system that approaches a maximum temperature of 158 degrees F within the first 72 hours of placement. In addition, it includes all concrete elements with a section thickness of 3 feet or more regardless of temperature.
- g. "Mixture proportioning" is the process of designing concrete mixture proportions to enable it to meet the strength, service life and constructability requirements of the project while minimizing the initial and life-cycle cost.
- h. "Mixture proportions" are the masses or volumes of individual ingredients used to make a unit measure (cubic meter or cubic yard) of concrete.
- i. "Pozzolan" is a siliceous or siliceous and aluminous material, which in itself possesses little or no cementitious value but will, in finely divided form and in the presence of moisture, chemically react with calcium hydroxide at ordinary temperatures to form compounds possessing cementitious properties.
- j. "Workability (or consistence)" is the ability of a fresh (plastic) concrete mix to fill the form/mould properly with the desired work (vibration) and without reducing the concrete's quality. Workability depends on water content, chemical admixtures, aggregate (shape and size distribution), cementitious content and age (level of hydration).

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Concrete Curing Plan

Quality Control Plan; G

Quality Control Personnel Certifications; G

Quality Control Organizational Chart

Laboratory Accreditation; G

Form Removal Schedule; G

#### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Formwork



Reinforcing Steel; G

SD-03 Product Data

Joint Sealants; (LEED NC)

Joint Filler; (LEED NC)

Formwork Materials

Cementitious Materials; (LEED NC)

Vapor Retarder

Concrete Curing Materials

Reinforcement; (LEED NC)

Liquid Chemical Floor Hardeners and Sealers

Admixtures

Mechanical Reinforcing Bar Connectors

Biodegradable Form Release Agent

Pumping Concrete

Nonshrink Grout

SD-05 Design Data

Concrete Mix Design; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Concrete Mix Design; G

Fly Ash

Pozzolan

Slag Cement

Aggregates

Fiber-Reinforced Concrete; G

Compressive Strength Tests; G

Chloride Ion Concentration

Air Content

Slump Tests

Water

SD-07 Certificates

Reinforcing Bars

Welder Qualifications

VOC Content for Form Release Agents, Curing Compounds, and  
Concrete Penetrating Sealers

Safety Data Sheets

Field Testing Technician and Testing Agency

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Liquid Chemical Floor Hardeners and Sealers

Joint Sealants; (LEED NC)

Curing Compound

#### 1.4 MODIFICATION OF REFERENCES

Accomplish work in accordance with ACI publications except as modified herein. Consider the advisory or recommended provisions to be mandatory. Interpret reference to the "Building Official," the "Structural Engineer," and the "Architect/Engineer" to mean the Contracting Officer.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Follow ACI 301, ACI 304R and ASTM A934/A934M requirements and recommendations. Do not deliver concrete until vapor retarder, forms, reinforcement, embedded items, and chamfer strips are in place and ready for concrete placement. Do not store concrete curing compounds or sealers with materials that have a high capacity to adsorb volatile organic compound (VOC) emissions. Do not store concrete curing compounds or sealers in occupied spaces.

##### 1.5.1 Reinforcement

Store reinforcement of different sizes and shapes in separate piles or racks raised above the ground to avoid excessive rusting. Protect from contaminants such as grease, oil, and dirt. Ensure bar sizes can be accurately identified after bundles are broken and tags removed.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

##### 1.6.1 Design Data

##### 1.6.1.1 Concrete Mix Design

Sixty days minimum prior to concrete placement, submit a mix design for each strength and type of concrete. Submit a complete list of materials including type; brand; source and amount of cement, supplementary cementitious materials, fibers, and admixtures; and applicable reference specifications. Submit mill test and all other test for cement, supplementary cementitious materials, aggregates, and admixtures. Provide documentation of maximum nominal aggregate size, gradation analysis, percentage retained and passing sieve, and a graph of percentage retained verses sieve size. Provide mix proportion data using at least three

different water-cementitious material ratios for each type of mixture, which produce a range of strength encompassing those required for each type of concrete required. If source material changes, resubmit mix proportion data using revised source material. Provide only materials that have been proven by trial mix studies to meet the requirements of this specification, unless otherwise approved in writing by the Contracting Officer. Indicate clearly in the submittal where each mix design is used when more than one mix design is submitted. Resubmit data on concrete components if the qualities or source of components changes. For previously approved concrete mix designs used within the past twelve months, the previous mix design may be re-submitted without further trial batch testing if accompanied by material test data conducted within the last six months. Obtain mix design approval from the contracting officer prior to concrete placement.

#### 1.6.2 Shop Drawings

##### 1.6.2.1 Formwork

Drawings showing details of formwork including, but not limited to; joints, supports, studding and shoring, and sequence of form and shoring removal. Indicate placement schedule, construction, location and method of forming control joints. Include locations of inserts, conduit, sleeves and other embedded items. Reproductions of contract drawings are unacceptable. Submit [form removal schedule](#) indicating element and minimum length of time for form removal.

Design, fabricate, erect, support, brace, and maintain formwork so that it is able to support, without failure, all vertical and lateral loads that may reasonably be anticipated to be applied to the formwork.

##### 1.6.2.2 Reinforcing Steel

Indicate bending diagrams, assembly diagrams, splicing and laps of bars, shapes, dimensions, and details of bar reinforcing, accessories, and concrete cover. Do not scale dimensions from structural drawings to determine lengths of reinforcing bars. Reproductions of contract drawings are unacceptable.

#### 1.6.3 Control Submittals

##### 1.6.3.1 Concrete Curing Plan

Submit proposed materials, methods and duration for curing concrete elements in accordance with [ACI 308.1](#).

##### 1.6.3.2 Pumping Concrete

Submit proposed materials and methods for pumping concrete. Submittal must include mix designs, pumping equipment including type of pump and size and material for pipe, and maximum length and height concrete is to be pumped.

##### 1.6.3.3 VOC Content for form release agents, curing compounds, and concrete penetrating sealers

Submit certification for the form release agent, curing compounds, and concrete penetrating sealers that indicate the VOC content of each product.

#### 1.6.3.4 Safety Data Sheets

Submit Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for all materials that are regulated for hazardous health effects. SDS must be readily accessible during each work shift to employees when they are at the construction site.

#### 1.6.4 Test Reports

##### 1.6.4.1 Fly Ash and Pozzolan

Submit test results in accordance with **ASTM C618** for fly ash and pozzolan. Submit test results performed within 6 months of submittal date.

##### 1.6.4.2 Slag Cement

Submit test results in accordance with **ASTM C989/C989M** for slag cement. Submit test results performed within 6 months of submittal date.

##### 1.6.4.3 Aggregates

Submit test results in accordance with **ASTM C33/C33M**, or **ASTM C330/C330M** for lightweight aggregate, and **ASTM C1293** or **ASTM C1567** as required in the paragraph titled ALKALI-AGGREGATE REACTION.

##### 1.6.4.4 Fiber-Reinforced Concrete

Test to determine flexural toughness index I5 in accordance with **ASTM C1116/C1116M**.

#### 1.6.5 Quality Control Plan

Develop and submit for approval a concrete quality control program in accordance with the guidelines of **ACI 121R** and as specified herein. The plan must include approved laboratories. Provide direct oversight for the concrete qualification program inclusive of associated sampling and testing. All quality control reports must be provided to the Contracting Officer, Quality Manager and Concrete Supplier. Maintain a copy of **ACI SP-15** and **CRSI 10MSP** at project site.

#### 1.6.6 Quality Control Personnel Certifications

The Contractor must submit for approval the responsibilities of the various quality control personnel, including the names and qualifications of the individuals in those positions and a **quality control organizational chart** defining the quality control hierarchy and the responsibility of the various positions. Quality control personnel must be employed by the Contractor.

Submit American Concrete Institute certification for the following:

- a. CQC personnel responsible for inspection of concrete operations.
- b. Lead Foreman or Journeyman of the Concrete Placing, Finishing, and Curing Crews.
- c. Field Testing Technicians: ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade I.

#### 1.6.6.1 Quality Manager Qualifications

The quality manager must hold a current license as a professional engineer in a U.S. state or territory with experience on at least five similar projects. Evidence of extraordinary proven experience may be considered by the Contracting Officer as sufficient to act as the Quality Manager.

#### 1.6.6.2 Field Testing Technician and Testing Agency

Submit data on qualifications of proposed testing agency and technicians for approval by the Contracting Officer prior to performing testing on concrete.

- a. Work on concrete under this contract must be performed by an ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician Grade 1 qualified in accordance with [ACI SP-2](#) or equivalent. Equivalent certification programs must include requirements for written and performance examinations as stipulated in [ACI SP-2](#).
- b. Testing agencies that perform testing services on reinforcing steel must meet the requirements of [ASTM E329](#).
- c. Testing agencies that perform testing services on concrete materials must meet the requirements of [ASTM C1077](#).

#### 1.6.7 Laboratory Qualifications for Concrete Qualification Testing

The concrete testing laboratory must have the necessary equipment and experience to accomplish required testing. The laboratory must meet the requirements of [ASTM C1077](#) and be Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory (CCRL) inspected.

#### 1.6.8 Laboratory Accreditation

Laboratory and testing facilities must be provided by and at the expense of the Contractor. The laboratories performing the tests must be accredited in accordance with [ASTM C1077](#), including [ASTM C78/C78M](#) and [ASTM C1260](#). The accreditation must be current and must include the required test methods, as specified. Furthermore, the testing must comply with the following requirements:

- a. Aggregate Testing and Mix Proportioning: Aggregate testing and mixture proportioning studies must be performed by an accredited laboratory and under the direction of a registered professional engineer in a U.S. state or territory competent in concrete materials who is competent in concrete materials and must sign all reports and designs.
- b. Acceptance Testing: Furnish all materials, labor, and facilities required for molding, curing, testing, and protecting test specimens at the site and in the laboratory. Furnish and maintain boxes or other facilities suitable for storing and curing the specimens at the site while in the mold within the temperature range stipulated by [ASTM C31/C31M](#).
- c. Contractor Quality Control: All sampling and testing must be performed by an approved, onsite, independent, accredited laboratory.

## 1.7 QUALIFICATIONS FOR WELDING WORK

Welding procedures must be in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M.

Verify that Welder qualifications are in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M for welding of reinforcement or under an equivalent qualification test approved in advance. Welders are permitted to do only the type of welding for which each is specifically qualified.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FORMWORK MATERIALS

- a. Form-facing material in contact with concrete must be lumber, plywood, metal, or plastic. Submit product information on proposed form-facing materials if different from that specified herein.
- b. Design formwork, shores, reshores, and backshores to support loads transmitted to them and to comply with applicable building code requirements.
- c. Design formwork to withstand pressure resulting from placement and vibration of concrete and to maintain specified tolerances.
- d. Design formwork to accommodate waterstop materials in joints at locations indicated in Contract Documents.
- e. Provide temporary openings in formwork if needed to facilitate cleaning and inspection.
- f. Design formwork joints to inhibit leakage of mortar.
- g. Limit deflection of facing materials for concrete surfaces exposed to view to 1/240 of center-to-center spacing of facing supports.
- h. Do not use earth cuts as forms for vertical or sloping surfaces.
- i. Submit product information on proposed form-facing materials if different from that specified herein.
- j. Submit manufacturer's product data on form liner proposed for use with each formed surface.

#### 2.1.1 Wood Forms

Provide lumber that is square edged or tongue-and-groove boards, free of raised grain, knotholes, or other surface defects. Provide plywood that complies with NIST PS 1, B-B concrete form panels or better or AHA A135.4, hardboard for smooth form lining. Submit data verifying that composite wood products contain no urea formaldehyde resins.

##### 2.1.1.1 Concrete Form Plywood (Standard Rough)

Provide plywood that conforms to NIST PS 1, B-B, concrete form, not less than 5/8-inch thick.

##### 2.1.1.2 Overlaid Concrete Form Plywood (Standard Smooth)

Provide plywood that conforms to NIST PS 1, B-B, high density form overlay,

not less than 5/8-inch thick.

#### 2.1.2 Steel Forms

Provide steel form surfaces that do not contain irregularities, dents, or sags.

#### 2.2 FORMWORK ACCESSORIES

- a. Use commercially manufactured formwork accessories, including ties and hangers.
- b. Form ties and accessories must not reduce the effective cover of the reinforcement.

##### 2.2.1 Form Ties

- a. Use form ties with ends or end fasteners that can be removed without damage to concrete.
- b. Where indicated in Contract Documents, use form ties with integral water barrier plates or other acceptable positive water barriers in walls.
- c. The breakback distance for ferrous ties must be at least 3/4 in. for Surface Finish-2.0 or Surface Finish-3.0, as defined in ACI 301.
- d. If the breakback distance is less than 3/4 in., use coated or corrosion-resistant ties.
- e. Submit manufacturer's data sheet on form ties.

##### 2.2.2 Biodegradable Form Release Agent

- a. Provide form release agent that is colorless, biodegradable, and water-based, with a zero VOC content.
- b. Provide product that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
- c. Provide form release agent that reduces formwork moisture absorption, and does not contain diesel fuel, petroleum-based lubricating oils, waxes, or kerosene. Submit documentation indicating type of biobased material in product and biobased content. Indicate relative dollar value of biobased content products to total dollar value of products included in project.
- d. Submit manufacturer's product data on formwork release agent for use on each form-facing material.

##### 2.2.3 Chamfer Materials

Use lumber materials with dimensions of 3/4 x 3/4 in.

##### 2.2.4 Construction and movement joints

- a. Submit details and locations of construction joints in accordance with the requirements herein.

- b. Locate construction joints within middle one-third of spans of slabs, beams, and girders. If a beam intersects a girder within the middle one-third of girder span, the distance between the construction joint in the girder and the edge of the beam must be at least twice the width of the larger member.
- c. Locate construction joints in walls and columns at underside of slabs, beams, or girders and at tops of footings or slabs.
- d. Make construction joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
- e. Provide movement joints where indicated in Contract Documents or in accepted alternate locations.
- f. Submit location and detail of movement joints if different from those indicated in Contract Documents.
- g. Submit manufacturer's data sheet on expansion joint materials.
- h. Provide keyways where indicated in Contract Documents.

#### 2.2.5 Perimeter Insulation

Perimeter insulation must be polystyrene conforming to [ASTM C578](#), Type II; polyurethane conforming to [ASTM C591](#), Type II; or cellular glass conforming to [ASTM C552](#), Type I or IV.

#### 2.2.6 Other Embedded items

Use sleeves, inserts, anchors, and other embedded items of material and design indicated in Contract Documents.

### 2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

#### 2.3.1 Cementitious Materials

##### 2.3.1.1 Portland Cement

- a. Unless otherwise specified, provide cement that conforms to [ASTM C150/C150M](#) Type I.
- b. Use one brand and type of cement for formed concrete having exposed-to-view finished surfaces.
- c. Submit information along with evidence demonstrating compliance with referenced standards. Submittals must include types of cementitious materials, manufacturing locations, shipping locations, and certificates showing compliance.
- d. Cementitious materials must be stored and kept dry and free from contaminants.

##### 2.3.1.2 Fly Ash

- a. [ASTM C618](#), Class F, except that the maximum allowable loss on ignition must not exceed 3 percent.
- b. Fly ash content must be a minimum of 25 percent by weight of



cementitious material, provided the fly ash does not reduce the amount of cement in the concrete mix below the minimum requirements of local building codes. Where the use of fly ash cannot meet the minimum level, provide the maximum amount of fly ash permissible that meets the code requirements for cement content. Report the chemical analysis of the fly ash in accordance with [ASTM C311/C311M](#). Evaluate and classify fly ash in accordance with [ASTM D5759](#).

#### 2.3.1.3 Other Supplementary Cementitious Materials

Natural pozzolan must be raw or calcined and conform to [ASTM C618](#), Class N, including the optional requirements for uniformity and effectiveness in controlling ASR and must have an ignition loss not exceeding 3 percent. Class N pozzolan for use in mitigating ASR must have a Calcium Oxide (CaO) content of less than 13 percent and total equivalent alkali content less than 3 percent.

Ultra Fine Fly Ash (UFFA) and Ultra Fine Pozzolan (UFP) must conform to [ASTM C618](#), Class F or N, and the following additional requirements:

- a. The strength activity index at 28 days of age must be at least 95 percent of the control specimens.
- b. The average particle size must not exceed 6 microns.
- c. The sum of SiO<sub>2</sub> + Al<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + Fe<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> must be greater than 77 percent.

#### 2.3.2 Water

- a. Water or ice must comply with the requirements of [ASTM C1602/C1602M](#).
- b. Minimize the amount of water in the mix. Improve workability by adjusting the grading of the aggregate and using admixture rather than by adding water.
- c. Water must be potable; free from injurious amounts of oils, acids, alkalis, salts, organic materials, or other substances deleterious to concrete.
- d. Protect mixing water and ice from contamination during storage and delivery.
- e. Submit test report showing water complies with [ASTM C1602/C1602M](#).

#### 2.3.3 Aggregate

##### 2.3.3.1 Normal-Weight Aggregate

- a. Aggregates must conform to [ASTM C33/C33M](#).
- b. Aggregates used in concrete must be obtained from the same sources and have the same size range as aggregates used in concrete represented by submitted field test records or used in trial mixtures.
- c. Provide sand that is 100 percent natural sand.
- d. Store and handle aggregate in a manner that will avoid segregation and prevents contamination by other materials or other sizes of aggregates. Store aggregates in locations that will permit them to drain freely.

Do not use aggregates that contain frozen lumps.

- e. Submit types, pit or quarry locations, producers' names, aggregate supplier statement of compliance with **ASTM C33/C33M**, and **ASTM C1293** expansion data not more than 18 months old.

#### 2.3.4 **Admixtures**

- a. Chemical admixtures must conform to **ASTM C494/C494M**.
- b. Air-entraining admixtures must conform to **ASTM C260/C260M**.
- c. Chemical admixtures for use in producing flowing concrete must conform to **ASTM C1017/C1017M**.
- d. Do not use calcium chloride admixtures.
- e. Use an ASR-inhibiting admixture for concrete containing aggregate susceptible to ASR.
- f. Admixtures used in concrete must be the same as those used in the concrete represented by submitted field test records or used in trial mixtures.
- g. Protect stored admixtures against contamination, evaporation, or damage.
- h. To ensure uniform distribution of constituents, provide agitating equipment for admixtures used in the form of suspensions or unstable solutions. Protect liquid admixtures from freezing and from temperature changes that would adversely affect their characteristics.
- i. Submit types, brand names, producers' names, manufacturer's technical data sheets, and certificates showing compliance with standards required herein.

#### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

##### 2.4.1 **Concrete Curing Materials**

Provide concrete curing material in accordance with **ACI 301** Section 5 and **ACI 308.1** Section 2. Submit product data for concrete **curing compounds**. Submit manufactures instructions for placement of curing compound.

##### 2.4.2 **Nonshrink Grout**

Nonshrink grout in accordance with **ASTM C1107/C1107M**.

##### 2.4.3 **Floor Finish Materials**

###### 2.4.3.1 **Liquid Chemical Floor Hardeners and Sealers**

- a. Hardener must be a colorless aqueous solution containing a blend of inorganic silicate or siliconate material and proprietary components combined with a wetting agent; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces. Submit manufactures instructions for placement of liquid chemical floor hardener.
- b. Use concrete penetrating sealers with a low (maximum 100 grams/liter, less water and less exempt compounds) VOC content. Submit manufactures

instructions for placement of sealers.

#### 2.4.3.2 Abrasive Aggregate for Nonslip Aggregate Finish

Aggregate must be packaged, factory-graded fused aluminum oxide grits, or it may be crushed emery containing not less than 40-percent aluminum oxide and not less than 25-percent ferric oxide. Aggregate must be rust proof and nonglazing and must be unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.

#### 2.4.3.3 Dry Materials for Colored Wear-Resistant Finish

Provide materials that are packaged, dry, and a combination of materials formulated for producing colored and wear-resistant monolithic surface treatments; they must include portland cement, graded-quartz aggregate, coloring pigments, and dispersing agents. Provide coloring pigments that are finely ground, nonfacing mineral oxides prepared especially for the purpose and interground with the cement.

#### 2.4.3.4 Aggregate for Heavy-Duty Wear-Resistant Finish

Provide aggregate that is traprock or emery, as follows:

Traprock must be packaged, crushed, natural, fine-to-medium-grained, igneous rock, such as diabase, basalt, or black granite. Traprock aggregate must be well-graded in size from particles retained on **No. 4 sieve 0.187 inch** to particles passing **3/8-inch** sieve.

Emery must be packaged, factory-graded, crushed, natural-emery ore, cubical or polyhedral in form, containing not less than 35-percent aluminum oxide and not less than 24-percent ferric oxide. Emery aggregate must be well graded in size from particles retained on **No. 50 sieve 0.0118 inch** to particles passing **No. 8 sieve 0.0929 inch**.

#### 2.4.4 Expansion/Contraction **Joint Filler**

**ASTM D1751**. Material must be **1/2 inch** thick, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.4.5 **Joint Sealants**

Submit manufacturer's product data, indicating VOC content.

##### 2.4.5.1 Horizontal Surfaces, 3 Percent Slope, Maximum

**ASTM D6690** or **ASTM C920**, Type M, Class 25, Use T.

##### 2.4.5.2 Vertical Surfaces Greater Than 3 Percent Slope

**ASTM C920**, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, Use T.

##### 2.4.5.3 Preformed Polychloroprene Elastomeric Type

**ASTM D2628**.

##### 2.4.5.4 Lubricant for Preformed Compression Seals

**ASTM D2835**.

#### 2.4.6 Vapor Retarder

ASTM E1745 Class C polyethylene sheeting, minimum 10 mil thickness or other equivalent material with a maximum permeance rating of 0.04 perms per ASTM E96/E96M.

Consider plastic vapor retarders and adhesives with a high recycled content, low toxicity low VOC (Volatile Organic Compounds) levels.

#### 2.4.7 Dovetail Anchor Slot

Preformed metal slot approximately 1 inch by 1 inch of not less than 22 gage galvanized steel cast in concrete. Coordinate actual size and throat opening with dovetail anchors and provide with removable filler material.

### 2.5 CONCRETE MIX DESIGN

#### 2.5.1 Properties and Requirements

- a. Use materials and material combinations listed in this section and the contract documents.
- b. Cementitious material content must be adequate for concrete to satisfy the specified requirements for strength, w/cm, durability, and finishability described in this section and the contract documents.
- c. Selected target slump must meet the requirements this section, the contract documents, and must not exceed 9 in. Concrete must not show visible signs of segregation.
- d. The target slump must be enforced for the duration of the project. Determine the slump by ASTM C143/C143M. Slump tolerances must meet the requirements of ACI 117.
- e. The nominal maximum size of coarse aggregate for a mixture must not exceed three-fourths of the minimum clear spacing between reinforcement, one-fifth of the narrowest dimension between sides of forms, or one-third of the thickness of slabs or toppings.
- f. Concrete must be air entrained for members assigned to Exposure Class F1, F2, or F3. The total air content must be in accordance with the requirements of the paragraph titled DURABILITY.
- g. Measure air content at the point of delivery in accordance with ASTM C173/C173M or ASTM C231/C231M.
- h. Concrete for slabs to receive a hard-troweled finish must not contain an air-entraining admixture or have a total air content greater than 3 percent.
- i. Concrete properties and requirements for each portion of the structure are specified in the table below. Refer to the paragraph titled DURABILITY for more details on exposure categories and their requirements.

	Minimum $f'c$ psi	Exposure Categories^	Miscellaneous Requirements
Slabs-on-ground	4000 at 28 days	S0 F0 F1	

## 2.5.2 Durability

### 2.5.2.1 Alkali-Aggregate Reaction

Do not use any aggregate susceptible to alkali-carbonate reaction (ACR). Use one of the three options below for qualifying concrete mixtures to reduce the potential of alkali-silica reaction (ASR):

- For each aggregate used in concrete, the expansion result determined in accordance with ASTM C1293 must not exceed 0.04 percent at one year.
- For each aggregate used in concrete, the expansion result of the aggregate and cementitious materials combination determined in accordance with ASTM C1567 must not exceed 0.10 percent at an age of 16 days.

### 2.5.2.2 Freezing and Thawing Resistance

- Provide concrete meeting the following requirements based on exposure class assigned to members for freezing-and-thawing exposure in Contract Documents:

Exposure class	Maximum $w/cm^*$	Minimum $f'c$ , psi	Air content	Additional Requirements
F0	N/A	4000		N/A
F1	0.55		Depends on aggregate size	N/A

\*The maximum  $w/cm$  limits do not apply to lightweight concrete.

- Concrete must be air entrained for members assigned to Exposure Class F1, F2, or F3. The total air content must meet the requirements of the following table:

Nominal maximum aggregate size, in.	Total air content, percent*^	
	Exposure Class F2 and F3	Exposure Class F1
3/4	6.0	5.0

Nominal maximum aggregate size, in.	Total air content, percent*^	
	Exposure Class F2 and F3	Exposure Class F1
1	6.0	4.5

\*Tolerance on air content as delivered must be plus/minus 1.5 percent.  
^For f'c greater than 5000 psi, reducing air content by 1.0 percentage point is acceptable.

- c. Submit documentation verifying compliance with specified requirements.
- d. For sections of the structure that are assigned Exposure Class F3, submit certification on cement composition verifying that concrete mixture meets the requirements of the following table:

Cementitious material	Maximum percent of total cementitious material by mass*
Fly ash or other pozzolans conforming to ASTM C618	25

\*Total cementitious material also includes ASTM C150/C150M, ASTM C595/C595M, ASTM C845/C845M, and ASTM C1157/C1157M cement. The maximum percentages above must include:  
^Fly ash or other pozzolans and silica fume must constitute no more than 25 percent and 10 percent, respectively, of the total mass of the cementitious materials.

#### 2.5.2.3 Concrete Temperature

The temperature of concrete as delivered must not exceed 95°F.

#### 2.5.3 Trial Mixtures

Trial mixtures must be in accordance to ACI 301.

#### 2.5.4 Ready-Mix Concrete

Provide concrete that meets the requirements of ASTM C94/C94M.

Ready-mixed concrete manufacturer must provide duplicate delivery tickets with each load of concrete delivered. Provide delivery tickets with the following information in addition to that required by ASTM C94/C94M:

- a. Type and brand cement
- b. Cement and supplementary cementitious materials content in 94-pound bags per cubic yard of concrete
- c. Maximum size of aggregate
- d. Amount and brand name of admixtures
- e. Total water content expressed by water cementitious material ratio

#### 2.6 REINFORCEMENT

- a. Bend reinforcement cold. Fabricate reinforcement in accordance with

fabricating tolerances of **ACI 117**.

- b. When handling and storing coated reinforcement, use equipment and methods that do not damage the coating. If stored outdoors for more than 2 months, cover coated reinforcement with opaque protective material.
- c. Submit manufacturer's certified test report for reinforcement.
- d. Submit placing drawings showing fabrication dimensions and placement locations of reinforcement and reinforcement supports. Placing drawings must indicate locations of splices, lengths of lap splices, and details of mechanical and welded splices.
- e. Submit request with locations and details of splices not indicated in Contract Documents.
- f. Submit request to place column dowels without using templates.
- g. Submit request and procedure to field-bend or straighten reinforcing bars partially embedded in concrete at locations not indicated in Contract Documents.
- h. Submit request for field cutting, including location and type of bar to be cut and reason field cutting is required.

#### 2.6.1 Reinforcing Bars

- a. Reinforcing bars must be deformed, except spirals, load-transfer dowels, and welded wire reinforcement, which may be plain.
- b. **ASTM A615/A615M** with the bars marked A, Grade 60. Cold drawn wire used for spiral reinforcement must conform to **ASTM A1064/A1064M**.

##### 2.6.1.1 Stainless Steel Reinforcing Bars

Stainless steel bars must meet the requirements of **ASTM A955/A955M**.

##### 2.6.1.2 Headed Reinforcing Bars

Headed reinforcing bars must conform to **ASTM A970/A970M** including Annex A1, and other specified requirements.

##### 2.6.1.3 Bar Mats

- a. Bar mats must conform to **ASTM A184/A184M**.
- b. If coated bar mats are required, repair damaged coating as required in the paragraph titled GALVANIZED REINFORCING BARS EPOXY-COATED REINFORCING BARS and DUAL-COATED REINFORCING BARS.

##### 2.6.1.4 Headed Shear Stud Reinforcement

Headed studs and headed stud assemblies must conform to **ASTM A1044/A1044M**.

#### 2.6.2 Mechanical Reinforcing Bar Connectors

- a. Provide 125 percent minimum yield strength of the reinforcement bar.

- b. Mechanical splices for galvanized reinforcing bars must be galvanized or coated with dielectric material.
- c. Mechanical splices used with epoxy-coated or dual-coated reinforcing bars must be coated with dielectric material.
- d. Submit data on mechanical splices demonstrating compliance with this paragraph.

#### 2.6.3 Wire

Plain or deformed steel wire must conform to [ASTM A1064/A1064M](#).

#### 2.6.4 Welded wire reinforcement

- a. Use welded wire reinforcement specified in Contract Documents and conforming to one or more of the specifications given herein.
- b. Deformed welded wire reinforcement must conform to [ASTM A1064/A1064M](#), with welded intersections spaced no greater than 16 in. apart in direction of principal reinforcement.

#### 2.6.5 Reinforcing Bar Supports

- a. Provide reinforcement support types within structure as required by Contract Documents. Reinforcement supports must conform to [CRSI RB4.1](#). Submit description of reinforcement supports and materials for fastening coated reinforcement if not in conformance with [CRSI RB4.1](#).
- b. Legs of supports in contact with formwork must be hot-dip galvanized, or plastic coated after fabrication, or stainless-steel bar supports.

#### 2.6.6 Welding

[Welding of reinforcing is not permitted.](#)

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- a. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly constructed; verify that substrates are level.
- b. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Contracting Officer of unsatisfactory preparation before processing.
- c. Check field dimensions before beginning installation. If dimensions vary too much from design dimensions for proper installation, notify Contracting Officer and wait for instructions before beginning installation.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

Determine quantity of concrete needed and minimize the production of excess concrete. Designate locations or uses for potential excess concrete before the concrete is poured.



### 3.2.1 General

- a. Surfaces against which concrete is to be placed must be free of debris, loose material, standing water, snow, ice, and other deleterious substances before start of concrete placing.
- b. Remove standing water without washing over freshly deposited concrete. Divert flow of water through side drains provided for such purpose.

### 3.2.2 Subgrade Under Slabs on Ground

- a. Before construction of slabs on ground, have underground work on pipes and conduits completed and approved.
- b. Previously constructed subgrade or fill must be cleaned of foreign materials
- c. Finish surface of capillary water barrier under interior slabs on ground must not show deviation in excess of  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge parallel with and at right angles to building lines.
- d. Finished surface of subgrade or fill under exterior slabs on ground must not be more than 0.02-foot above or 0.10-foot below elevation indicated.

### 3.2.3 Edge Forms and Screed Strips for Slabs

- a. Set edge forms or bulkheads and intermediate screed strips for slabs to obtain indicated elevations and contours in finished slab surface and must be strong enough to support vibrating bridge screeds or roller pipe screeds if nature of specified slab finish requires use of such equipment.
- b. Align concrete surface to elevation of screed strips by use of strike-off templates or approved compacting-type screeds.

### 3.2.4 Reinforcement and Other Embedded Items

- a. Secure reinforcement, joint materials, and other embedded materials in position, inspected, and approved before start of concrete placing.
- b. When concrete is placed, reinforcement must be free of materials deleterious to bond. Reinforcement with rust, mill scale, or a combination of both will be considered satisfactory, provided minimum nominal dimensions, nominal weight, and minimum average height of deformations of a hand-wire-brushed test specimen are not less than applicable ASTM specification requirements.

### 3.3 FORMS

- a. Provide forms, shoring, and scaffolding for concrete placement. Set forms mortar-tight and true to line and grade.
- b. Chamfer above grade exposed joints, edges, and external corners of concrete 0.75 inch. Place chamfer strips in corners of formwork to produce beveled edges on permanently exposed surfaces.
- c. Provide formwork with clean-out openings to permit inspection and

removal of debris.

- d. Inspect formwork and remove foreign material before concrete is placed.
- e. At construction joints, lap form-facing materials over the concrete of previous placement. Ensure formwork is placed against hardened concrete so offsets at construction joints conform to specified tolerances.
- f. Provide positive means of adjustment (such as wedges or jacks) of shores and struts. Do not make adjustments in formwork after concrete has reached initial setting. Brace formwork to resist lateral deflection and lateral instability.
- g. Fasten form wedges in place after final adjustment of forms and before concrete placement.
- h. Provide anchoring and bracing to control upward and lateral movement of formwork system.
- i. Construct formwork for openings to facilitate removal and to produce opening dimensions as specified and within tolerances.
- j. Provide runways for moving equipment. Support runways directly on formwork or structural members. Do not support runways on reinforcement. Loading applied by runways must not exceed capacity of formwork or structural members.
- k. Position and support expansion joint materials, waterstops, and other embedded items to prevent displacement. Fill voids in sleeves, inserts, and anchor slots temporarily with removable material to prevent concrete entry into voids.
- l. Clean surfaces of formwork and embedded materials of mortar, grout, and foreign materials before concrete placement.

#### 3.3.1 Coating

- a. Cover formwork surfaces with an acceptable material that inhibits bond with concrete.
- b. If formwork release agent is used, apply to formwork surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations before placing reinforcement. Remove excess release agent on formwork prior to concrete placement.
- c. Do not allow formwork release agent to contact reinforcement or hardened concrete against which fresh concrete is to be placed.

#### 3.3.2 Reshoring

- a. Do not allow structural members to be loaded with combined dead and construction loads in excess of loads indicated in the accepted procedure.
- b. Install and remove reshores or backshores in accordance with accepted procedure.
- c. For floors supporting shores under newly placed concrete, either leave

original supporting shores in place, or install reshores or backshores. Shoring system and supporting slabs must resist anticipated loads. Locate reshores and backshores directly under a shore position or as indicated on formwork shop drawings.

- d. In multistory buildings, place reshoring or backshoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute weight of newly placed concrete, forms, and construction live loads.

#### 3.3.3 Reuse

- a. Reuse forms providing the structural integrity of concrete and the aesthetics of exposed concrete are not compromised.
- b. Wood forms must not be clogged with paste and must be capable of absorbing high water-cementitious material ratio paste.
- c. Remove leaked mortar from formwork joints before reuse.

#### 3.3.4 Forms for Standard Rough Form Finish

Provide formwork in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 with a surface finish, SF-1.0, for formed surfaces that are to be concealed by other construction.

#### 3.3.5 Forms for Standard Smooth Form Finish

Provide formwork in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 with a surface finish, SF-3.0, for formed surfaces that are exposed to view. Do not provide mockup of concrete surface appearance and texture.

#### 3.3.6 Form Ties

- a. For post-tensioned structures, do not remove formwork supports until stressing records have been accepted by the Contracting Officer.
- b. After ends or end fasteners of form ties have been removed, repair tie holes in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 requirements.

#### 3.3.7 Forms for Concrete Pan Joist Construction

Pan-form units for one-way or two-way concrete joist and slab construction must be factory-fabricated units of the approximate section indicated. Units must consist of steel or molded fiberglass concrete form pans. Closure units must be furnished as required.

#### 3.3.8 Tolerances for Form Construction

- a. Construct formwork so concrete surfaces conform to tolerances in [ACI 117](#).
- b. Position and secure sleeves, inserts, anchors, and other embedded items such that embedded items are positioned within [ACI 117](#) tolerances.
- c. To maintain specified elevation and thickness within tolerances, install formwork to compensate for deflection and anticipated settlement in formwork during concrete placement. Set formwork and intermediate screed strips for slabs to produce designated elevation, camber, and contour of finished surface before formwork removal. If specified finish requires use of vibrating screeds or roller pipe

screeds, ensure that edge forms and screed strips are strong enough to support such equipment.

### 3.3.9 Removal of Forms and Supports

- a. If vertical formed surfaces require finishing, remove forms as soon as removal operations will not damage concrete.
- b. Remove top forms on sloping surfaces of concrete as soon as removal will not allow concrete to sag. Perform repairs and finishing operations required. If forms are removed before end of specified curing period, provide curing and protection.
- c. Do not damage concrete during removal of vertical formwork for columns, walls, and sides of beams. Perform needed repair and finishing operations required on vertical surfaces. If forms are removed before end of specified curing period, provide curing and protection.
- d. Leave formwork and shoring in place to support construction loads and weight of concrete in beams, slabs, and other structural members until in-place required strength of concrete is reached.
- e. Form-facing material and horizontal facing support members may be removed before in-place concrete reaches specified compressive strength if shores and other supports are designed to allow facing removal without deflection of supported slab or member.

### 3.3.10 Strength of Concrete Required for Removal of Formwork

If removal of formwork, reshoring, or backshoring is based on concrete reaching a specified in-place strength, mold and field-cure cylinders in accordance with [ASTM C31/C31M](#). Test cylinders in accordance with [ASTM C39/C39M](#). Alternatively, use one or more of the methods listed herein to evaluate in-place concrete strength for formwork removal.

- a. Tests of cast-in-place cylinders in accordance with [ASTM C873/C873M](#). This option is limited to slabs with concrete depths from 5 to 12 in.
- b. Penetration resistance in accordance with [ASTM C803/C803M](#).
- c. Pullout strength in accordance with [ASTM C900](#).
- d. Maturity method in accordance with [ASTM C1074](#). Submit maturity method data using project materials and concrete mix proportions used on the project to demonstrate the correlation between maturity and compressive strength of laboratory cured test specimens to the Contracting Officer.

## 3.4 PLACING REINFORCEMENT AND MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- a. Unless otherwise specified, placing reinforcement and miscellaneous materials must be in accordance to [ACI 301](#). Provide bars, welded wire reinforcement, wire ties, supports, and other devices necessary to install and secure reinforcement.
- b. Reinforcement must not have rust, scale, oil, grease, clay, or foreign substances that would reduce the bond. Rusting of reinforcement is a basis of rejection if the effective cross-sectional area or the nominal weight per unit length has been reduced. Remove loose rust prior to placing steel. Tack welding is prohibited.

- c. Nonprestressed cast-in-place concrete members must have concrete cover for reinforcement **as noted on contract drawings.**

#### 3.4.1 General

Provide details of reinforcement that are in accordance with the Contract Documents.

#### 3.4.2 Vapor Retarder

- a. Install in accordance with **ASTM E1643**. Provide beneath the on-grade concrete floor slab. Use the greatest widths and lengths practicable to eliminate joints wherever possible. Lap joints a minimum of **12 inches** and tape.
- b. Remove torn, punctured, or damaged vapor retarder material and provide with new vapor retarder prior to placing concrete. Concrete placement must not damage vapor retarder.

#### 3.4.3 Perimeter Insulation

Install perimeter insulation at locations indicated. Adhesive must be used where insulation is applied to the interior surface of foundation walls and may be used for exterior application.

#### 3.4.4 Reinforcement Supports

Provide reinforcement support in accordance with **CRSI RB4.1** and **ACI 301** Section 3 requirements. Supports for coated or galvanized bars must also be coated with electrically compatible material for a distance of at least **2 inches** beyond the point of contact with the bars.

#### 3.4.5 Splicing

As indicated in the Contract Documents. For splices not indicated follow **ACI 301**. Do not splice at points of maximum stress. Overlap welded wire reinforcement the spacing of the cross wires, plus **2 inches**.

#### 3.4.6 Future Bonding

Plug exposed, threaded, mechanical reinforcement bar connectors with a greased bolt. Provide bolt threads that match the connector. Countersink the connector in the concrete. Caulk the depression after the bolt is installed.

#### 3.4.7 Setting Miscellaneous Material

Place and secure anchors and bolts, pipe sleeves, conduits, and other such items in position before concrete placement and support against displacement. Plumb anchor bolts and check location and elevation. Temporarily fill voids in sleeves with readily removable material to prevent the entry of concrete.

#### 3.4.8 Fabrication

Shop fabricate reinforcing bars to conform to shapes and dimensions indicated for reinforcement, and as follows:

- a. Provide fabrication tolerances that are in accordance with **ACI 117**.
- b. Provide hooks and bends that are in accordance with the Contract Documents.

Reinforcement must be bent cold to shapes as indicated. Bending must be done in the shop. Rebending of a reinforcing bar that has been bent incorrectly is not be permitted. Bending must be in accordance with standard approved practice and by approved machine methods.

Deliver reinforcing bars bundled, tagged, and marked. Tags must be metal with bar size, length, mark, and other information pressed in by machine. Marks must correspond with those used on the placing drawings.

Do not use reinforcement that has any of the following defects:

- a. Bar lengths, depths, and bends beyond specified fabrication tolerances
- b. Bends or kinks not indicated on drawings or approved shop drawings
- c. Bars with reduced cross-section due to rusting or other cause

Replace defective reinforcement with new reinforcement having required shape, form, and cross-section area.

#### 3.4.9 Placing Reinforcement

Place reinforcement in accordance with **ACI 301**.

For slabs on grade (over earth or over capillary water barrier) and for footing reinforcement, support bars or welded wire reinforcement on precast concrete blocks, spaced at intervals required by size of reinforcement, to keep reinforcement the minimum height specified above the underside of slab or footing.

For slabs other than on grade, supports for which any portion is less than **1 inch** from concrete surfaces that are exposed to view or to be painted must be of precast concrete units, plastic-coated steel, or stainless steel protected bar supports. Precast concrete units must be wedge shaped, not larger than **3-1/2 by 3-1/2 inches**, and of thickness equal to that indicated for concrete protection of reinforcement. Provide precast units that have cast-in galvanized tie wire hooked for anchorage and blend with concrete surfaces after finishing is completed.

Provide reinforcement that is supported and secured together to prevent displacement by construction loads or by placing of wet concrete, and as follows:

- a. Provide supports for reinforcing bars that are sufficient in number and have sufficient strength to carry the reinforcement they support, and in accordance with **ACI 301** and **CRSI 10MSP**. Do not use supports to support runways for concrete conveying equipment and similar construction loads.
- b. Equip supports on ground and similar surfaces with sand-plates.
- c. Support welded wire reinforcement as required for reinforcing bars.
- d. Secure reinforcements to supports by means of tie wire. Wire must be

black, soft iron wire, not less than 16 gage.

- e. Reinforcement must be accurately placed, securely tied at intersections, and held in position during placing of concrete by spacers, chairs, or other approved supports. Point wire-tie ends away from the form. Unless otherwise indicated, numbers, type, and spacing of supports must conform to the Contract Documents.
- f. Bending of reinforcing bars partially embedded in concrete is permitted only as specified in the Contract Documents.

#### 3.4.10 Spacing of Reinforcing Bars

- a. Spacing must be as indicated in the Contract Documents.
- b. Reinforcing bars may be relocated to avoid interference with other reinforcement, or with conduit, pipe, or other embedded items. If any reinforcing bar is moved a distance exceeding one bar diameter or specified placing tolerance, resulting rearrangement of reinforcement is subject to preapproval by the Contracting Officer.

#### 3.4.11 Concrete Protection for Reinforcement

Additional concrete protection must be in accordance with the Contract Documents.

### 3.5 BATCHING, MEASURING, MIXING, AND TRANSPORTING CONCRETE

In accordance with ASTM C94/C94M, ACI 301, ACI 302.1R and ACI 304R, except as modified herein. Batching equipment must be such that the concrete ingredients are consistently measured within the following tolerances: 1 percent for cement and water, 2 percent for aggregate, and 3 percent for admixtures. Furnish mandatory batch ticket information for each load of ready mix concrete.

#### 3.5.1 Measuring

Make measurements at intervals as specified in paragraphs SAMPLING and TESTING.

#### 3.5.2 Mixing

- a. Mix concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M, ACI 301 and ACI 304R.
- b. Machine mix concrete. Begin mixing within 30 minutes after the cement has been added to the aggregates. Place concrete within 90 minutes of either addition of mixing water to cement and aggregates or addition of cement to aggregates if the air temperature is less than 84 degrees F.
- c. Reduce mixing time and place concrete within 60 minutes if the air temperature is greater than 84 degrees F except as follows: if set retarding admixture is used and slump requirements can be met, limit for placing concrete may remain at 90 minutes. Additional water may be added, provided that both the specified maximum slump and submitted water-cementitious material ratio are not exceeded and the required concrete strength is still met. When additional water is added, an additional 30 revolutions of the mixer at mixing speed is required.
- d. Dissolve admixtures in the mixing water and mix in the drum to

uniformly distribute the admixture throughout the batch. Do not reconstitute concrete that has begun to solidify.

### 3.5.3 Transporting

Transport concrete from the mixer to the forms as rapidly as practicable. Prevent segregation or loss of ingredients. Clean transporting equipment thoroughly before each batch. Do not use aluminum pipe or chutes. Remove concrete which has segregated in transporting and dispose of as directed.

### 3.6 PLACING CONCRETE

Place concrete in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5.

#### 3.6.1 Pumping

ACI 304R and ACI 304.2R. Pumping must not result in separation or loss of materials nor cause interruptions sufficient to permit loss of plasticity between successive increments. Loss of slump in pumping equipment must not exceed 2 inches at discharge/placement. Do not convey concrete through pipe made of aluminum or aluminum alloy. Avoid rapid changes in pipe sizes. Limit maximum size of coarse aggregate to 33 percent of the diameter of the pipe. Limit maximum size of well-rounded aggregate to 40 percent of the pipe diameter. Take samples for testing at both the point of delivery to the pump and at the discharge end.

#### 3.6.2 Cold Weather

Cold weather concrete must meet the requirements of ACI 301 and ACI 306.1 unless otherwise specified. Do not allow concrete temperature to decrease below 50 degrees F. Obtain approval prior to placing concrete when the ambient temperature is below 40 degrees F or when concrete is likely to be subjected to freezing temperatures within 24 hours. Cover concrete and provide sufficient heat to maintain 50 degrees F minimum adjacent to both the formwork and the structure while curing. Limit the rate of cooling to 37 degrees F in any 1 hour and 50 degrees F per 24 hours after heat application.

#### 3.6.3 Hot Weather

Hot weather concrete must meet the requirements of ACI 301 and ACI 305.1 unless otherwise specified. Maintain required concrete temperature using Figure 4.2 in ACI 305R to prevent the evaporation rate from exceeding 0.2 pound of water per square foot of exposed concrete per hour. Cool ingredients before mixing or use other suitable means to control concrete temperature and prevent rapid drying of newly placed concrete. Shade the fresh concrete as soon as possible after placing. Start curing when the surface of the fresh concrete is sufficiently hard to permit curing without damage. Provide water hoses, pipes, spraying equipment, and water hauling equipment, where job site is remote to water source, to maintain a moist concrete surface throughout the curing period. Provide burlap cover or other suitable, permeable material with fog spray or continuous wetting of the concrete when weather conditions prevent the use of either liquid membrane curing compound or impervious sheets. For vertical surfaces, protect forms from direct sunlight and add water to top of structure once concrete is set.



#### 3.6.4 Bonding

Surfaces of set concrete at joints, must be roughened and cleaned of laitance, coatings, loose particles, and foreign matter. Roughen surfaces in a manner that exposes the aggregate uniformly and does not leave laitance, loosened particles of aggregate, nor damaged concrete at the surface.

Obtain bonding of fresh concrete that has set as follows:

- a. At joints between footings and walls or columns, between walls or columns and the beams or slabs they support, and elsewhere unless otherwise specified; roughened and cleaned surface of set concrete must be dampened, but not saturated, immediately prior to placing of fresh concrete.
- b. At joints in exposed-to-view work; at vertical joints in walls; at joints near midpoint of span in girders, beams, supported slabs, other structural members; in work designed to contain liquids; the roughened and cleaned surface of set concrete must be dampened but not saturated and covered with a cement grout coating.
- c. Provide cement grout that consists of equal parts of portland cement and fine aggregate by weight with not more than 6 gallons of water per sack of cement. Apply cement grout with a stiff broom or brush to a minimum thickness of 1/16 inch. Deposit fresh concrete before cement grout has attained its initial set.

#### 3.7 WASTE MANAGEMENT

Provide as specified in the Waste Management Plan and as follows.

##### 3.7.1 Mixing Equipment

Before concrete pours, designate Contractor-owned site meeting environmental standards for cleaning out concrete mixing trucks. Minimize water used to wash equipment.

##### 3.7.2 Reinforcing Steel

Collect reinforcing steel and place in designated area for recycling.

##### 3.7.3 Other Waste

Identify concrete manufacturer's or supplier's policy for collection or return of construction waste, unused material, deconstruction waste, and/or packaging material. Institute deconstruction and construction waste separation and recycling for use in manufacturer's programs. When such a program is not available, seek local recyclers to reclaim the materials.

#### 3.8 SURFACE FINISHES EXCEPT FLOOR, SLAB, AND PAVEMENT FINISHES

##### 3.8.1 Defects

Repair surface defects in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5.

##### 3.8.2 Not Against Forms (Top of Walls)

Surfaces not otherwise specified must be finished with wood floats to even

surfaces. Finish must match adjacent finishes.

### 3.8.3 Formed Surfaces

#### 3.8.3.1 Tolerances

Tolerances in accordance with [ACI 117](#) and as indicated.

#### 3.8.3.2 As-Cast Rough Form

Provide for surfaces not exposed to public view a surface finish SF-1.0. Patch holes and defects in accordance with [ACI 301](#).

#### 3.8.3.3 Standard Smooth Finish

Provide for surfaces exposed to public view a surface finish SF-3.0. Patch holes and defects in accordance with [ACI 301](#).

#### 3.8.4 Smooth-Rubbed Finish

Provide a smooth-rubbed finish per [ACI 301](#) Section 5 in the locations indicated. Provide a grout-cleaned rubbed finish per [ACI 301](#) Section 5 in the locations indicated. Provide a cork-floated finish per [ACI 301](#) Section 5 in the locations indicated. Provide an exposed aggregate finish per [ACI 301](#) Section 5 in the locations indicated.

### 3.9 FLOOR, SLAB, AND PAVEMENT FINISHES AND MISCELLANEOUS CONSTRUCTION

In accordance with [ACI 301](#) and [ACI 302.1R](#), unless otherwise specified. Slope floors uniformly to drains where drains are provided. Depress the concrete base slab where quarry tile, ceramic tile, are indicated. Steel trowel and fine-broom finish concrete slabs that are to receive quarry tile, ceramic tile, or paver tile. Where straightedge measurements are specified, Contractor must provide straightedge.

#### 3.9.1 Finish

Place, consolidate, and immediately strike off concrete to obtain proper contour, grade, and elevation before bleedwater appears. Permit concrete to attain a set sufficient for floating and supporting the weight of the finisher and equipment. If bleedwater is present prior to floating the surface, drag the excess water off or remove by absorption with porous materials. Do not use dry cement to absorb bleedwater.

##### 3.9.1.1 Scratched

Use for surfaces intended to receive bonded applied cementitious applications. Finish concrete in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 for a scratched finish.

##### 3.9.1.2 Floated

Use for surfaces to receive waterproofing membranes and sand bed terrazzo. Finish concrete in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 for a floated finish.

##### 3.9.1.3 Steel Troweled

Use for floors intended as walking surfaces, and for reception of floor coverings. Finish concrete in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 for a

steel troweled finish.

#### 3.9.1.4 Nonslip Finish

Use on surfaces of exterior platforms, steps, and landings; and on exterior and interior pedestrian ramps. Finish concrete in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 for a dry-shake finish. After the selected material has been embedded by the two floatings, complete the operation with a broomed finish.

#### 3.9.1.5 Broomed

Use on surfaces of exterior walks, platforms, patios, and ramps, unless otherwise indicated. Finish concrete in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 for a broomed finish.

#### 3.9.1.6 Pavement

Screed the concrete with a template advanced with a combined longitudinal and crosswise motion. Maintain a slight surplus of concrete ahead of the template. After screeding, float the concrete longitudinally. Use a straightedge to check slope and flatness; correct and refloat as necessary. Obtain final finish by a burlap drag. Drag a strip of clean, wet burlap from 3 to 10 feet wide and 2 feet longer than the pavement width across the slab. Produce a fine, granular, sandy textured surface without disfiguring marks. Round edges and joints with an edger having a radius of 1/8 inch.

#### 3.9.1.7 Concrete Toppings Placement

The following requirements apply to the placement of toppings of concrete on base slabs that are either freshly placed and still plastic, or on hardened base slabs.

- a. Placing on a Fresh Base: Screed and bull float the base slab. As soon as the water sheen has disappeared, lightly rake the surface of the base slab with a stiff bristle broom to produce a bonding surface for the topping. Immediately spread the topping mixture evenly over the roughened base before final set takes place. Give the topping the finish specified herein.
- b. Bonding to a Hardened Base: When the topping is to be bonded to a floated or troweled hardened base, roughen the base by scarifying, grit-blasting, scabbling, planing, flame cleaning, or acid-etching to lightly expose aggregate and provide a bonding surface. Remove dirt, laitance, and loose aggregate by means of a stiff wire broom. Keep the clean base wet for a period of 12 hours preceding the application of the topping. Remove excess water and apply a 1:1:1/2 cement-sand-water grout, and brush into the surface of the base slab. Do not allow the cement grout to dry, and spread it only short distances ahead of the topping placement. Do not allow the temperature differential between the completed base and the topping mixture to exceed 41 degrees F at the time of placing. Place the topping and finish as specified herein.

#### 3.9.1.8 Chemical-Hardener Treatment

Apply liquid-chemical floor hardener where indicated after curing and drying concrete surface. Dilute liquid hardener with water and apply in three coats. First coat must be one-third strength, second coat one-half strength, and third coat two-thirds strength. Apply each coat evenly and

allow to dry 24 hours between coats.

Approved proprietary chemical hardeners must be applied in accordance with manufacturer's printed directions.

#### 3.9.1.9 Colored Wear-Resistant Finish

- a. Give finish to monolithic slab surfaces where indicated.
- b. Apply dry shake materials for colored wear-resistant finish at the rate of 60 pounds per 100 square feet of surface.
- c. Immediately following first floating operation, approximately two-thirds of specified weight of dry shake material must be uniformly distributed over surface and embedded by means of power floating. After first dry-shake application has been embedded, uniformly distribute remainder of dry-shake material over surface at right angles to first dry-shake application and embed by means of power floating. Trueness of surface and other requirements for floating operations not specified in this paragraph must be as specified for float finish.
- d. After completion of float finish, apply a trowel finish as specified.

#### 3.9.1.10 Heavy-Duty Wear-Resistant Finish

- a. Give finish to slab surfaces where indicated.
- b. Dry-shake material for heavy-duty, wear-resistant finish must consist of a mixture of standard portland cement and aggregate for heavy-duty, wear-resistant finish proportioned by weight as follows:

One part standard portland cement and four parts emery aggregate for heavy-duty wear-resistant finish.

- c. Apply blended dry-shake material as follows:

Maximum type of aggregate in dry shake	Amount per 100 square feet of Surface
Traprock	160 pounds
Emery	130 pounds
Iron	130 pounds

- d. Immediately following the first floating operation, approximately one-half the specified weight of blended, uniformly distribute dry-shake materials over the surface and embedded by means of power floating. After the first dry-shake application has been embedded, uniformly distribute the remaining one-half of the blended dry-shake material over the surface at right angles to the first dry-shake application and embedded by means of power floating. Trueness of surface and other requirements for floating operations not specified in this paragraph must be as specified for float finish.
- e. After completion of the float finish, trowel finish the surface as specified.

### 3.9.2 Concrete Walks

Provide 4 inches thick minimum. Provide contraction joints spaced every 5 linear feet unless otherwise indicated. Cut contraction joints 1 inch deep, or one fourth the slab thickness whichever is deeper, with a jointing tool after the surface has been finished. Provide 0.5 inch thick transverse expansion joints at changes in direction where sidewalk abuts curb, steps, rigid pavement, or other similar structures; space expansion joints every 50 feet maximum. Give walks a broomed finish. Unless indicated otherwise, provide a transverse slope of 1/48. Limit variation in cross section to 1/4 inch in 5 feet.

### 3.9.3 Pits and Trenches

Place bottoms and walls monolithically or provide waterstops and keys.

### 3.9.4 Curbs and Gutters

Provide contraction joints spaced every 10 feet maximum unless otherwise indicated. Cut contraction joints 3/4 inch deep with a jointing tool after the surface has been finished. Provide expansion joints 1/2 inch thick and spaced every 100 feet maximum unless otherwise indicated. Perform pavement finish.

### 3.9.5 Splash Blocks

Provide at outlets of downspouts emptying at grade. Splash blocks may be precast concrete, and must be 24 inches long, 12 inches wide and 4 inches thick, unless otherwise indicated, with smooth-finished countersunk dishes sloped to drain away from the building.

## 3.10 JOINTS

### 3.10.1 Construction Joints

Make and locate joints not indicated so as not to impair strength and appearance of the structure, as approved. Joints must be perpendicular to main reinforcement. Reinforcement must be continued and developed across construction joints. Locate construction joints as follows:

#### 3.10.1.1 Maximum Allowable Construction Joint Spacing

- a. In walls at not more than 60 feet in any horizontal direction.
- b. In slabs on ground, so as to divide slab into areas not in excess of 1,200 square feet.

#### 3.10.1.2 Construction Joints for Constructability Purposes

- a. In walls, at top of footing; at top of slabs on ground; at top and bottom of door and window openings or where required to conform to architectural details; and at underside of deepest beam or girder framing into wall.
- b. In columns or piers, at top of footing; at top of slabs on ground; and at underside of deepest beam or girder framing into column or pier.
- c. Near midpoint of spans for supported slabs, beams, and girders unless a

beam intersects a girder at the center, in which case construction joints in girder must offset a distance equal to twice the width of the beam. Make transfer of shear through construction joint by use of inclined reinforcement.

Provide keyways at least 1-1/2-inches deep in construction joints in walls and slabs and between walls and footings; approved bulkheads may be used for slabs.

### 3.10.2 Isolation Joints in Slabs on Ground

- a. Provide joints at points of contact between slabs on ground and vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and elsewhere as indicated.
- b. Fill joints with premolded joint filler strips 1/2 inch thick, extending full slab depth. Install filler strips at proper level below finish floor elevation with a slightly tapered, dress-and-oiled wood strip temporarily secured to top of filler strip to form a groove not less than 3/4 inch in depth where joint is sealed with sealing compound and not less than 1/4 inch in depth where joint sealing is not required. Remove wood strip after concrete has set. Contractor must clean groove of foreign matter and loose particles after surface has dried.

### 3.10.3 Contraction Joints in Slabs on Ground

- a. Provide joints to form panels as indicated.
- b. Under and on exact line of each control joint, cut 50 percent of welded wire reinforcement before placing concrete.
- c. Sawcut contraction joints into slab on ground in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5.
- d. Sawcutting will be limited to within 12 hours after set and at 1/4 slab depth.

### 3.10.4 Sealing Joints in Slabs on Ground

- a. Contraction and control joints which are to receive finish flooring material must be sealed with joint sealing compound after concrete curing period. Slightly underfill groove with joint sealing compound to prevent extrusion of compound. Remove excess material as soon after sealing as possible.
- b. Sealed groove must be left ready to receive filling material that is provided as part of finish floor covering work.

## 3.11 CONCRETE FLOOR TOPPING

### 3.11.1 Standard Floor Topping

Provide topping for treads and platforms of metal steel stairs and elsewhere as indicated.

#### 3.11.1.1 Preparations Prior to Placing

- a. When topping is placed on a green concrete base slab, screed surface of

base slab to a level not more than 1-1/2 inches nor less than 1 inch below required finish surface. Remove water and laitance from surface of base slab before placing topping mixture. As soon as water ceases to rise to surface of base slab, place topping.

- b. When topping is placed on a hardened concrete base slab, remove dirt, loose material, oil, grease, asphalt, paint, and other contaminants from base slab surface, leaving a clean surface. Prior to placing topping mixture, 2-1/2-inches minimum, slab surface must be dampened and left free of standing water. Immediately before topping mixture is placed, broom a coat of neat cement grout onto surface of slab. Do not allow cement grout to set or dry before topping is placed.
- c. When topping is placed on a metal surface, such as metal pans for steel stairs, remove dirt, loose material, oil, grease, asphalt, paint, and other contaminants from metal surface.

#### 3.11.1.2 Placing

Spread standard topping mixture evenly on previously prepared base slab or metal surface, brought to correct level with a straightedge, and struck off. Topping must be consolidated, floated, checked for trueness of surface, and refloated as specified for float finish.

#### 3.11.1.3 Finishing

Give trowel finish standard floor topping surfaces.

Give other finishes standard floor topping surfaces as indicated.

#### 3.11.2 Heavy-Duty Floor Topping

Provide topping where indicated.

##### 3.11.2.1 Heavy-duty Topping Mixture

Provide mixture that consists of 1 part portland cement and 2-1/2 parts emery aggregate or 1 part fine aggregate and 1-1/2 parts traprock coarse aggregate, by volume. Exact proportions of mixture must conform to recommendations of aggregate manufacturer. Mixing water must not exceed 3-1/4 gallons per 94-pound sack of cement including unabsorbed moisture in aggregate. Maximum slump must be 1 inch.

##### 3.11.2.2 Base Slab

- a. Screed surface of slab to a level no more than 1-1/2 inches nor less than 1 inch below grade of finished floor.
- b. Give slab a scratch finish as specified.
- c. Preparations prior to placing.

Remove dirt, loose material, oil, grease, asphalt, paint and other contaminants from base slab surface. Prior to placing topping mixture, dampen slab surface and leave free of standing water. Immediately before topping mixture is placed, broom a coat of neat cement grout onto surface of slab. Allow cement grout to set or dry before topping mixture is placed.

### 3.11.2.3 Placing

Spread heavy-duty topping mixture evenly on previously prepared base slab, and bring to correct level with a straightedge, and strike off. Provide topping that is consolidated, floated, and checked for trueness of surface as specified for float finish, except that power-driven floats is the impact type.

### 3.11.2.4 Finishing

Give trowel finish heavy-duty floor topping surfaces. Provide trowel finish as specified, except that additional troweling after first power troweling must be not less than three hand-troweling operations.

## 3.12 CURING AND PROTECTION

Curing and protection in accordance with **ACI 301** Section 5, unless otherwise specified. Begin curing immediately following form removal. Avoid damage to concrete from vibration created by blasting, pile driving, movement of equipment in the vicinity, disturbance of formwork or protruding reinforcement, and any other activity resulting in ground vibrations. Protect concrete from injurious action by sun, rain, flowing water, frost, mechanical injury, tire marks, and oil stains. Do not allow concrete to dry out from time of placement until the expiration of the specified curing period. Do not use membrane-forming compound on surfaces where appearance would be objectionable, on any surface to be painted, where coverings are to be bonded to the concrete, or on concrete to which other concrete is to be bonded. If forms are removed prior to the expiration of the curing period, provide another curing procedure specified herein for the remaining portion of the curing period. Provide moist curing for those areas receiving liquid chemical sealer, hardener, or epoxy coating. Allow curing compound/sealer installations to cure prior to the installation of materials that adsorb VOCs.

### 3.12.1 Curing Periods

**ACI 301** Section 5, except 10 days for retaining walls, pavement or chimneys. Begin curing immediately after placement. Protect concrete from premature drying, excessively hot temperatures, and mechanical injury; and maintain minimal moisture loss at a relatively constant temperature for the period necessary for hydration of the cement and hardening of the concrete. The materials and methods of curing are subject to approval by the Contracting Officer.

### 3.12.2 Curing Formed Surfaces

Accomplish curing of formed surfaces, including undersurfaces of girders, beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period or until forms are removed. If forms are removed before end of curing period, accomplish final curing of formed surfaces by any of the curing methods specified above, as applicable.

### 3.12.3 Curing Unformed Surfaces

- a. Accomplish initial curing of unformed surfaces, such as monolithic slabs, floor topping, and other flat surfaces, by membrane curing.



#### 3.12.4 Temperature of Concrete During Curing

When temperature of atmosphere is 41 degrees F and below, maintain temperature of concrete at not less than 55 degrees F throughout concrete curing period or 45 degrees F when the curing period is measured by maturity. When necessary, make arrangements before start of concrete placing for heating, covering, insulation, or housing as required to maintain specified temperature and moisture conditions for concrete during curing period.

When the temperature of atmosphere is 80 degrees F and above or during other climatic conditions which cause too rapid drying of concrete, make arrangements before start of concrete placing for installation of wind breaks, of shading, and for fog spraying, wet sprinkling, or moisture-retaining covering of light color as required to protect concrete during curing period.

Changes in temperature of concrete must be uniform and not exceed 37 degrees F in any 1 hour nor 80 degrees F in any 24-hour period.

#### 3.12.5 Protection from Mechanical Injury

During curing period, protect concrete from damaging mechanical disturbances, particularly load stresses, heavy shock, and excessive vibration and from damage caused by rain or running water.

#### 3.12.6 Protection After Curing

Protect finished concrete surfaces from damage by construction operations.

### 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### 3.13.1 Sampling

ASTM C172/C172M. Collect samples of fresh concrete to perform tests specified. ASTM C31/C31M for making test specimens.

#### 3.13.2 Testing

##### 3.13.2.1 Slump Tests

ASTM C143/C143M. Take concrete samples during concrete placement/discharge. The maximum slump may be increased as specified with the addition of an approved admixture provided that the water-cementitious material ratio is not exceeded. Perform tests at commencement of concrete placement, when test cylinders are made, and for each batch (minimum) or every 20 cubic yards (maximum) of concrete.

##### 3.13.2.2 Temperature Tests

Test the concrete delivered and the concrete in the forms. Perform tests in hot or cold weather conditions (below 50 degrees F and above 80 degrees F) for each batch (minimum) or every 20 cubic yards (maximum) of concrete, until the specified temperature is obtained, and whenever test cylinders and slump tests are made.

##### 3.13.2.3 Compressive Strength Tests

ASTM C39/C39M. Make six 6 inch by 12 inch test cylinders for each set of

tests in accordance with ASTM C31/C31M, ASTM C172/C172M and applicable requirements of ACI 305R and ACI 306R. Take precautions to prevent evaporation and loss of water from the specimen. Test two cylinders at 7 days, two cylinders at 28 days, two cylinders at 56 days and hold two cylinder in reserve. Take samples for strength tests of each mix design of and for concrete placed each day not less than once a day, nor less than once for each 100 cubic yards of concrete for the first 500 cubic yards, then every 500 cubic yards thereafter, nor less than once for each 5400 square feet of surface area for slabs or walls. For the entire project, take no less than five sets of samples and perform strength tests for each mix design of concrete placed. Each strength test result must be the average of two cylinders from the same concrete sample tested at 28 days. Concrete compressive tests must meet the requirements of this section, the Contract Document, and ACI 301. Retest locations represented by erratic core strengths. Where retest does not meet concrete compressive strength requirements submit a mitigation or remediation plan for review and approval by the contracting officer. Repair core holes with nonshrink grout. Match color and finish of adjacent concrete.

#### 3.13.2.4 Air Content

ASTM C173/C173M or ASTM C231/C231M for normal weight concrete. Test air-entrained concrete for air content at the same frequency as specified for slump tests.

#### 3.13.2.5 Chloride Ion Concentration

Chloride ion concentration must meet the requirements of the paragraph titled CORROSION AND CHLORIDE CONTENT. Determine water soluble ion concentration in accordance with ASTM C1218/C1218M. Perform test once for each mix design.

#### 3.13.2.6 Strength of Concrete Structure

The strength of the concrete structure will be considered to be deficient if any of the following conditions are identified:

- a. Failure to meet compressive strength tests as evaluated.
- b. Reinforcement not conforming to requirements specified.
- c. Concrete which differs from required dimensions or location in such a manner as to reduce strength.
- d. Concrete curing and protection of concrete against extremes of temperature during curing, not conforming to requirements specified.
- e. Concrete subjected to damaging mechanical disturbances, particularly load stresses, heavy shock, and excessive vibration.
- f. Poor workmanship likely to result in deficient strength.

Where the strength of the concrete structure is considered deficient submit a mitigation or remediation plan for review and approval by the contracting officer.

#### 3.13.2.7 Non-Conforming Materials

Factors that indicate that there are non-conforming materials include (but

not limited to) excessive compressive strength, inadequate compressive strength, excessive slump, excessive voids and honeycombing, concrete delivery records that indicate excessive time between mixing and placement, or excessive water was added to the mixture during delivery and placement. Any of these indicators alone are sufficient reason for the Contracting Officer to request additional sampling and testing.

Investigations into non-conforming materials must be conducted at the Contractor's expense. The Contractor must be responsible for the investigation and must make written recommendations to adequately mitigate or remediate the non-conforming material. The Contracting Officer may accept, accept with reduced payment, require mitigation, or require removal and replacement of non-conforming material at no additional cost to the Government.

### 3.13.2.8 Testing Concrete Structure for Strength

When there is evidence that strength of concrete structure in place does not meet specification requirements or there are non-conforming materials, make cores drilled from hardened concrete for compressive strength determination in accordance with [ASTM C42/C42M](#), and as follows:

- a. Take at least three representative cores from each member or area of concrete-in-place that is considered potentially deficient. Location of cores will be determined by the Contracting Officer.
- b. Test cores after moisture conditioning in accordance with [ASTM C42/C42M](#) if concrete they represent is more than superficially wet under service.
- c. Air dry cores, (60 to 80 degrees F with relative humidity less than 60 percent) for 7 days before test and test dry if concrete they represent is dry under service conditions.
- d. Strength of cores from each member or area are considered satisfactory if their average is equal to or greater than 85 percent of the 28-day design compressive strength of the class of concrete.
- e. Core specimens will be taken and tested by the Government. If the results of core-boring tests indicate that the concrete as placed does not conform to the drawings and specification, the cost of such tests and restoration required must be borne by the Contractor.

Fill core holes solid with patching mortar and finished to match adjacent concrete surfaces.

Correct concrete work that is found inadequate by core tests in a manner approved by the Contracting Officer.

### 3.14 REPAIR, REHABILITATION AND REMOVAL

Before the Contracting Officer accepts the structure the Contractor must inspect the structure for cracks, damage and substandard concrete placements that may adversely affect the service life of the structure. A report documenting these defects must be prepared which includes recommendations for repair, removal or remediation must be submitted to the Contracting Officer for approval before any corrective work is accomplished.

#### 3.14.1 Crack Repair

Prior to final acceptance, all cracks in excess of 0.02 inches wide must be documented and repaired. The proposed method and materials to repair the cracks must be submitted to the Contracting Officer for approval. The proposal must address the amount of movement expected in the crack due to temperature changes and loading.

#### 3.14.2 Repair of Weak Surfaces

Weak surfaces are defined as mortar-rich, rain-damaged, uncured, or containing exposed voids or deleterious materials. Concrete surfaces with weak surfaces less than 1/4 inch thick must be diamond ground to remove the weak surface. Surfaces containing weak surfaces greater than 1/4 inch thick must be removed and replaced or mitigated in a manner acceptable to the Contracting Officer.

#### 3.14.3 Failure of Quality Assurance Test Results

Proposed mitigation efforts by the Contractor must be approved by the Contracting Officer prior to proceeding.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 31 00 00

EARTHWORK  
08/08

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 MEASUREMENT PROCEDURES

1.1.1 Excavation

The unit of measurement for excavation will be the cubic yard, computed by the average end area method from cross sections taken before and after the excavation operations, including the excavation for ditches, gutters, and channel changes, when the material is acceptably utilized or disposed of as herein specified. The measurements will include authorized excavation of rock (except for piping trenches that is covered below), authorized excavation of unsatisfactory subgrade soil, and the volume of loose, scattered rocks and boulders collected within the limits of the work; allowance will be made on the same basis for selected backfill ordered as replacement. The measurement will not include the volume of subgrade material or other material that is scarified or plowed and reused in-place, and will not include the volume excavated without authorization or the volume of any material used for purposes other than directed. The measurement will not include the volume of any excavation performed prior to the taking of elevations and measurements of the undisturbed grade.

1.1.2 Piping Trench Excavation

Measure trench excavation by the number of linear feet along the centerline of the trench and excavate to the depths and widths specified for the particular size of pipe. Replace unstable trench bottoms with a selected granular material. Include the additional width at manholes and similar structures, the furnishing, placing and removal of sheeting and bracing, pumping and bailing, and all incidentals necessary to complete the work required by this section.

1.1.3 Topsoil Requirements

Separate excavation, hauling, and spreading or piling of topsoil and related miscellaneous operations will be considered subsidiary obligations of the Contractor, covered under the contract unit price for excavation.

1.1.4 Select Granular Material

Measure select granular material in place as the actual cubic yards replacing wet or unstable material in trench bottoms within the limits shown. Provide unit prices which include furnishing and placing the granular material, excavation and disposal of unsatisfactory material, and additional requirements for sheeting and bracing, pumping, bailing, cleaning, and other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

1.2 PAYMENT PROCEDURES

Payment will constitute full compensation for all labor, equipment, tools, supplies, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

#### 1.2.1 Piping Trench Excavation

Payment for trench excavation will constitute full payment for excavation and backfilling, except in rock or unstable trench bottoms.

#### 1.2.2 Unclassified Excavation

Unclassified excavation will be paid for at the contract unit price per cubic yard for unclassified excavation.

#### 1.2.3 Unclassified Borrow

Unclassified borrow will be paid for at the contract unit price per cubic yard for unclassified borrow.

#### 1.3 CRITERIA FOR BIDDING

Base bids on the following criteria:

- a. Surface elevations are as indicated.
- b. Pipes or other artificial obstructions, except those indicated, will not be encountered.
- c. Ground water elevations indicated by the boring log were those existing at the time subsurface investigations were made and do not necessarily represent ground water elevation at the time of construction.
- d. Material character is indicated by the boring logs.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)

AASHTO T 180 (2017) Standard Method of Test for  
Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using  
a 4.54-kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457-mm  
(18-in.) Drop

AASHTO T 224 (2010) Standard Method of Test for  
Correction for Coarse Particles in the  
Soil Compaction Test

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA C600 (2017) Installation of Ductile-Iron Mains  
and Their Appurtenances

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C33/C33M (2018) Standard Specification for Concrete  
Aggregates

ASTM C136/C136M (2019) Standard Test Method for Sieve

Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates

ASTM D698	(2012; E 2014; E 2015) Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/cu. ft. (600 kN-m/cu. m.))
ASTM D1140	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Determining the Amount of Material Finer than 75-µm (No. 200) Sieve in Soils by Washing
ASTM D1556/D1556M	(2015; E 2016) Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D1557	(2012; E 2015) Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft <sup>3</sup> ) (2700 kN-m/m <sup>3</sup> )
ASTM D2434	(1968; R 2006) Permeability of Granular Soils (Constant Head)
ASTM D2487	(2017; E 2020) Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)
ASTM D4318	(2017; E 2018) Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D6938	(2017a) Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)

U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA)

EPA 600/4-79/020	(1983) Methods for Chemical Analysis of Water and Wastes
EPA SW-846.3-3	(1999, Third Edition, Update III-A) Test Methods for Evaluating Solid Waste: Physical/Chemical Methods

1.5 DEFINITIONS

1.5.1 Satisfactory Materials

Satisfactory materials comprise any materials classified by [ASTM D2487](#) as GW, GP, GM, GP-GM, GW-GM, GC, GP-GC, GM-GC, SW, SP . Satisfactory materials for grading comprise stones less than [8 inches](#), except for fill material for pavements and railroads which comprise stones less than [3 inches](#) in any dimension.

#### 1.5.2 Unsatisfactory Materials

Materials which do not comply with the requirements for satisfactory materials are unsatisfactory. Unsatisfactory materials also include man-made fills; trash; refuse; backfills from previous construction; and material classified as satisfactory which contains root and other organic matter or frozen material. Notify the Contracting Officer when encountering any contaminated materials.

#### 1.5.3 Cohesionless and Cohesive Materials

Cohesionless materials include materials classified in [ASTM D2487](#) as GW, GP, SW, and SP. Cohesive materials include materials classified as GC, SC, ML, CL, MH, and CH. Materials classified as GM and SM will be identified as cohesionless only when the fines are nonplastic. Perform testing, required for classifying materials, in accordance with [ASTM D4318](#), [ASTM C136/C136M](#) and [ASTM D1140](#).

#### 1.5.4 Degree of Compaction

Degree of compaction required, except as noted in the second sentence, is expressed as a percentage of the maximum density obtained by the test procedure presented in [ASTM D1557](#) abbreviated as a percent of laboratory maximum density. Since [ASTM D1557](#) applies only to soils that have 30 percent or less by weight of their particles retained on the [3/4 inch](#) sieve, express the degree of compaction for material having more than 30 percent by weight of their particles retained on the [3/4 inch](#) sieve as a percentage of the maximum density in accordance with [AASHTO T 180](#) and corrected with [AASHTO T 224](#). To maintain the same percentage of coarse material, use the "remove and replace" procedure as described in NOTE 8 of Paragraph 7.2 in [AASHTO T 180](#).

#### 1.5.5 Topsoil

Material suitable for topsoils obtained from excavations is defined as: Natural, friable soil representative of productive, well-drained soils in the area, free of subsoil, stumps, rocks larger than [one inch](#) diameter, brush, weeds, toxic substances, and other material detrimental to plant growth. Amend topsoil pH range to obtain a pH of 5.5 to 7.

#### 1.5.6 Hard/Unyielding Materials

Hard/Unyielding materials comprise weathered rock, dense consolidated deposits, or conglomerate materials which are not included in the definition of "rock" with stones greater than [3 inch](#) in any dimension or as defined by the pipe manufacturer, whichever is smaller. These materials usually require the use of heavy excavation equipment, ripper teeth, or jack hammers for removal.

#### 1.5.7 Rock

Solid homogeneous interlocking crystalline material with firmly cemented, laminated, or foliated masses or conglomerate deposits, neither of which can be removed without systematic drilling and blasting, drilling and the use of expansion jacks or feather wedges, or the use of backhoe-mounted pneumatic hole punchers or rock breakers; also large boulders, buried masonry, or concrete other than pavement exceeding [1/2 cubic yard](#) in volume. Removal of hard material will not be considered rock excavation because of intermittent drilling and blasting that is performed merely to



increase production.

#### 1.5.8 Unstable Material

Unstable materials are too wet to properly support the utility pipe, conduit, or appurtenant structure.

#### 1.5.9 Select Granular Material

##### 1.5.9.1 General Requirements

Select granular material consist of materials classified as GW, GP, SW, SP, or by [ASTM D2487](#) where indicated. The liquid limit of such material must not exceed 30 percent when tested in accordance with [ASTM D4318](#). The plasticity index must not be greater than 6 percent when tested in accordance with [ASTM D4318](#), and not more than 25 percent by weight may be finer than No. 200 sieve when tested in accordance with [ASTM D1140](#). Provide a minimum coefficient of permeability of 0.002 feet per minute when tested in accordance with [ASTM D2434](#).

##### 1.5.10 Initial Backfill Material

Initial backfill consists of select granular material or satisfactory materials free from rocks 3 inches or larger in any dimension or free from rocks of such size as recommended by the pipe manufacturer, whichever is smaller. When the pipe is coated or wrapped for corrosion protection, free the initial backfill material of stones larger than 3 inches in any dimension or as recommended by the pipe manufacturer, whichever is smaller.

#### 1.6 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Subsurface soil boring logs are shown on attached [Geotechnical Engineering Report](#). These data represent the best subsurface information available; however, variations may exist in the subsurface between boring locations.

##### 1.6.1 Classification of Excavation

No consideration will be given to the nature of the materials, and all excavation will be designated as unclassified excavation.

##### 1.6.1.1 Common Excavation

Include common excavation with the satisfactory removal and disposal of all materials not classified as rock excavation.

##### 1.6.2 Dewatering Work Plan

Submit procedures for accomplishing dewatering work.

#### 1.7 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section [01 33 00](#)  
SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

[SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals](#)

[Shoring; G](#)

SD-03 Product Data

Utilization of Excavated Materials; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Testing

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR OFFSITE SOILS

Test offsite soils brought in for use as backfill for Total Petroleum Hydrocarbons (TPH), Benzene, Toluene, Ethyl Benzene, and Xylene (BTEX) and full Toxicity Characteristic Leaching Procedure (TCLP) including ignitability, corrosivity and reactivity. Backfill shall contain a maximum of 100 parts per million (ppm) of total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH) and a maximum of 10 ppm of the sum of Benzene, Toluene, Ethyl Benzene, and Xylene (BTEX) and shall pass the TCPL test. Determine TPH concentrations by using EPA 600/4-79/020 Method 418.1. Determine BTEX concentrations by using EPA SW-846.3-3 Method 5030/8020. Perform TCLP in accordance with EPA SW-846.3-3 Method 1311. Provide Borrow Site Testing for TPH, BTEX and TCLP from a composite sample of material from the borrow site, with at least one test from each borrow site. Do not bring material onsite until tests have been approved by the Contracting Officer.

2.2 BURIED WARNING AND IDENTIFICATION TAPE

Provide polyethylene plastic warning tape manufactured specifically for warning and identification of buried utility lines. Provide tape on rolls, 3 inches minimum width, color coded as specified below for the intended utility with warning and identification imprinted in bold black letters continuously over the entire tape length. Warning and identification to read, "CAUTION, BURIED (intended service) LINE BELOW" or similar wording. Provide permanent color and printing, unaffected by moisture or soil.

Warning Tape Color Codes	
Red	Electric
Yellow	Gas, Oil; Dangerous Materials
Orange	Telephone and Other Communications
Blue	Water Systems
Green	Sewer Systems
White	Steam Systems
Gray	Compressed Air

2.2.1 Warning Tape for Metallic Piping

Provide acid and alkali-resistant polyethylene plastic tape conforming to

the width, color, and printing requirements specified above, with a minimum thickness of 0.003 inch and a minimum strength of 1500 psi lengthwise, and 1250 psi crosswise, with a maximum 350 percent elongation.

#### 2.2.2 Detectable Warning Tape for Non-Metallic Piping

Provide polyethylene plastic tape conforming to the width, color, and printing requirements specified above, with a minimum thickness of 0.004 inch, and a minimum strength of 1500 psi lengthwise and 1250 psi crosswise. Manufacture tape with integral wires, foil backing, or other means of enabling detection by a metal detector when tape is buried up to 3 feet deep. Encase metallic element of the tape in a protective jacket or provide with other means of corrosion protection.

#### 2.3 DETECTION WIRE FOR NON-METALLIC PIPING

Insulate a single strand, solid copper detection wire with a minimum of 12 AWG.

#### 2.4 MATERIAL FOR RIP-RAP

Provide Filter fabric and rock conforming to NCDOT for construction indicated.

##### 2.4.1 Bedding Material

Provide bedding material consisting of sand, gravel, or crushed rock, well graded, with a maximum particle size of 2 inches. Compose material of tough, durable particles. Allow fines passing the No. 200 standard sieve with a plasticity index less than six.

##### 2.4.2 Rock

Provide rock fragments sufficiently durable to ensure permanence in the structure and the environment in which it is to be used. Use rock fragments free from cracks, seams, and other defects that would increase the risk of deterioration from natural causes. Provide fragments sized so that no individual fragment exceeds a weight of 150 pounds and that no more than 10 percent of the mixture, by weight, consists of fragments weighing 2 pounds or less each. Provide rock with a minimum specific gravity of 2.50. Do not permit the inclusion of more than trace 1 percent quantities of dirt, sand, clay, and rock fines.

#### 2.5 CAPILLARY WATER BARRIER

Provide capillary water barrier of clean, poorly graded crushed rock, crushed gravel, or uncrushed gravel placed beneath a building slab with or without a vapor barrier to cut off the capillary flow of pore water to the area immediately below. Conform to ASTM C33/C33M for fine aggregate grading with a maximum of 3 percent by weight passing ASTM D1140, No. 200 sieve.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 STRIPPING OF TOPSOIL

Where indicated or directed, strip topsoil to a depth of 4 inches. Spread topsoil on areas already graded and prepared for topsoil, or transported and deposited in stockpiles convenient to areas that are to receive

application of the topsoil later, or at locations indicated or specified. Keep topsoil separate from other excavated materials, brush, litter, objectionable weeds, roots, stones larger than 2 inches in diameter, and other materials that would interfere with planting and maintenance operations. any surplus of topsoil from excavations and gradings.

### 3.2 GENERAL EXCAVATION

Perform excavation of every type of material encountered within the limits of the project to the lines, grades, and elevations indicated and as specified. Perform the grading in accordance with the typical sections shown and the tolerances specified in paragraph FINISHING. Transport satisfactory excavated materials and place in fill or embankment within the limits of the work. Excavate unsatisfactory materials encountered within the limits of the work below grade and replace with satisfactory materials as directed. Include such excavated material and the satisfactory material ordered as replacement in excavation. Dispose surplus satisfactory excavated material not required for fill or embankment in areas approved for surplus material storage or designated waste areas. Dispose unsatisfactory excavated material in designated waste or spoil areas. During construction, perform excavation and fill in a manner and sequence that will provide proper drainage at all times. Excavate material required for fill or embankment in excess of that produced by excavation within the grading limits from the borrow areas indicated or from other approved areas selected by the Contractor as specified.

#### 3.2.1 Ditches, Gutters, and Channel Changes

Finish excavation of ditches, gutters, and channel changes by cutting accurately to the cross sections, grades, and elevations shown on Drawing Sheet No. CH-030 and CG-031. Do not excavate ditches and gutters below grades shown. Backfill the excessive open ditch or gutter excavation with satisfactory, thoroughly compacted, material or with suitable stone or cobble to grades shown. Dispose excavated material as shown or as directed, except in no case allow material be deposited a maximum 4 feet from edge of a ditch. Maintain excavations free from detrimental quantities of leaves, brush, sticks, trash, and other debris until final acceptance of the work.

#### 3.2.2 Dewatering

Control groundwater flowing toward or into excavations to prevent sloughing of excavation slopes and walls, boils, uplift and heave in the excavation and to eliminate interference with orderly progress of construction. Do not permit French drains, sumps, ditches or trenches within 3 feet of the foundation of any structure, except with specific written approval, and after specific contractual provisions for restoration of the foundation area have been made. Take control measures by the time the excavation reaches the water level in order to maintain the integrity of the in situ material. While the excavation is open, maintain the water level continuously, at least 2 feet below the working level. Operate dewatering system continuously until construction work below existing water levels is complete. Submit performance records weekly.

#### 3.2.3 Trench Excavation Requirements

Excavate the trench as recommended by the manufacturer of the pipe to be installed. Slope trench walls below the top of the pipe, or make vertical, and of such width as recommended in the manufacturer's printed installation

manual. Provide vertical trench walls where no manufacturer's printed installation manual is available. Shore trench walls more than 4 feet high, cut back to a stable slope, or provide with equivalent means of protection for employees who may be exposed to moving ground or cave in. Shore vertical trench walls more than 4 feet high. Excavate trench walls which are cut back to at least the angle of repose of the soil. Give special attention to slopes which may be adversely affected by weather or moisture content. Do not exceed the trench width below the pipe top of 24 inches plus pipe outside diameter (O.D.) for pipes of less than 24 inches inside diameter, and do not exceed 36 inches plus pipe outside diameter for sizes larger than 24 inches inside diameter. Where recommended trench widths are exceeded, provide redesign, stronger pipe, or special installation procedures by the Contractor. The Contractor is responsible for the cost of redesign, stronger pipe, or special installation procedures without any additional cost to the Government.

#### 3.2.3.1 Bottom Preparation

Grade the bottoms of trenches accurately to provide uniform bearing and support for the bottom quadrant of each section of the pipe. Excavate bell holes to the necessary size at each joint or coupling to eliminate point bearing. Remove stones of 3 inch or greater in any dimension, or as recommended by the pipe manufacturer, whichever is smaller, to avoid point bearing.

#### 3.2.3.2 Removal of Unyielding Material

Where unyielding material is encountered in the bottom of the trench, remove such material 4 inch below the required grade and replaced with suitable materials as provided in paragraph BACKFILLING AND COMPACTION.

#### 3.2.3.3 Removal of Unstable Material

Where unstable material is encountered in the bottom of the trench, remove such material to the depth directed and replace it to the proper grade with select granular material as provided in paragraph BACKFILLING AND COMPACTION. When removal of unstable material is required due to the Contractor's fault or neglect in performing the work, the Contractor is responsible for excavating the resulting material and replacing it without additional cost to the Government.

#### 3.2.3.4 Jacking, Boring, and Tunneling

Unless otherwise indicated, provide excavation by open cut except that sections of a trench may be jacked, bored, or tunneled if, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, the pipe, cable, or duct can be safely and properly installed and backfill can be properly compacted in such sections.

#### 3.2.4 Underground Utilities

The Contractor is responsible for movement of construction machinery and equipment over pipes and utilities during construction. Perform work adjacent to non-Government utilities as indicated in accordance with procedures outlined by utility company. Excavation made with power-driven equipment is not permitted within 2 feet of known Government-owned utility or subsurface construction. For work immediately adjacent to or for excavations exposing a utility or other buried obstruction, excavate by hand. Start hand excavation on each side of the indicated obstruction and continue until the obstruction is uncovered or until clearance for the new

grade is assured. Support uncovered lines or other existing work affected by the contract excavation until approval for backfill is granted by the Contracting Officer. Report damage to utility lines or subsurface construction immediately to the Contracting Officer.

### 3.2.5 Structural Excavation

Ensure that footing subgrades have been inspected and approved by the Contracting Officer prior to concrete placement. Excavate to bottom of pile cap prior to placing or driving piles, unless authorized otherwise by the Contracting Officer. Backfill and compact over excavations and changes in grade due to pile driving operations to 95 percent of **ASTM D698** maximum density.

### 3.3 OPENING AND DRAINAGE OF EXCAVATION AND BORROW PITS

Notify the Contracting Officer sufficiently in advance of the opening of any excavation or borrow pit **or borrow areas** to permit elevations and measurements of the undisturbed ground surface to be taken. Except as otherwise permitted, **excavate borrow pits and other** excavation areas providing adequate drainage. Transport overburden and other spoil material to designated spoil areas or otherwise dispose of as directed. **Provide neatly trimmed and drained borrow pits after the excavation is completed.** Ensure that excavation of any area, **operation of borrow pits**, or dumping of spoil material results in minimum detrimental effects on natural environmental conditions.

### 3.4 SHORING

#### 3.4.1 General Requirements

Submit a Shoring and Sheet piling plan for approval 15 days prior to starting work. Submit drawings and calculations, certified by a registered professional engineer, describing the methods for shoring and sheet piling of excavations. Finish shoring, including sheet piling, and install as necessary to protect workmen, banks, adjacent paving, structures, and utilities. Remove shoring, bracing, and sheet piling as excavations are backfilled, in a manner to prevent caving.

#### 3.4.2 Geotechnical Engineer

Hire a Professional Geotechnical Engineer to provide inspection of excavations and soil/groundwater conditions throughout construction. The Geotechnical Engineer is responsible for performing pre-construction and periodic site visits throughout construction to assess site conditions. The Geotechnical Engineer is responsible for updating the excavation, sheet piling and dewatering plans as construction progresses to reflect changing conditions and submit an updated plan if necessary. Submit a monthly written report, informing the Contractor and Contracting Officer of the status of the plan and an accounting of the Contractor's adherence to the plan addressing any present or potential problems. The Contracting Officer is responsible for arranging meetings with the Geotechnical Engineer at any time throughout the contract duration.

### 3.5 GRADING AREAS

Where indicated, divide work into grading areas within which satisfactory excavated material will be placed in embankments, fills, and required backfills. Do not haul satisfactory material excavated in one grading area

to another grading area except when so directed in writing. Place and grade stockpiles of satisfactory materials as specified. Keep stockpiles in a neat and well drained condition, giving due consideration to drainage at all times. Clear, grub, and seal by rubber-tired equipment, the ground surface at stockpile locations; separately stockpile excavated satisfactory and unsatisfactory materials. Protect stockpiles of satisfactory materials from contamination which may destroy the quality and fitness of the stockpiled material. If the Contractor fails to protect the stockpiles, and any material becomes unsatisfactory, remove and replace such material with satisfactory material from approved sources.

### 3.6 FINAL GRADE OF SURFACES TO SUPPORT CONCRETE

Do not excavate to final grade until just before concrete is to be placed. Only use excavation methods that will leave the foundation rock in a solid and unshattered condition. Roughen the level surfaces, and cut the sloped surfaces, as indicated, into rough steps or benches to provide a satisfactory bond. Protect shales from slaking and all surfaces from erosion resulting from ponding or water flow.

### 3.7 GROUND SURFACE PREPARATION

#### 3.7.1 General Requirements

Remove and replace unsatisfactory material with satisfactory materials, as directed by the Contracting Officer, in surfaces to receive fill or in excavated areas. Scarify the surface to a depth of **6 inches** before the fill is started. Plow, step, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so that the fill material will bond with the existing material. When subgrades are less than the specified density, break up the ground surface to a minimum depth of **6 inches**, pulverizing, and compacting to the specified density. When the subgrade is part fill and part excavation or natural ground, scarify the excavated or natural ground portion to a depth of **12 inches** and compact it as specified for the adjacent fill.

#### 3.7.2 Frozen Material

Do not place material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost. Finish compaction by sheepsfoot rollers, pneumatic-tired rollers, steel-wheeled rollers, or other approved equipment well suited to the soil being compacted. Moisten material as necessary to provide the moisture content that will readily facilitate obtaining the specified compaction with the equipment used.

### 3.8 UTILIZATION OF EXCAVATED MATERIALS

Dispose unsatisfactory materials removing from excavations into designated waste disposal or spoil areas. Use satisfactory material removed from excavations, insofar as practicable, in the construction of fills, embankments, subgrades, shoulders, bedding (as backfill), and for similar purposes. Submit procedure and location for disposal of unused satisfactory material. **Submit proposed source of borrow material.** Do not waste any satisfactory excavated material without specific written authorization. Dispose of satisfactory material, authorized to be wasted, in designated areas approved for surplus material storage or designated waste areas as directed. Clear and grub newly designated waste areas on Government-controlled land before disposal of waste material thereon. Stockpile and use coarse rock from excavations for constructing slopes or

embankments adjacent to streams, or sides and bottoms of channels and for protecting against erosion. Do not dispose excavated material to obstruct the flow of any stream, endanger a partly finished structure, impair the efficiency or appearance of any structure, or be detrimental to the completed work in any way.

### 3.9 BURIED TAPE AND DETECTION WIRE

#### 3.9.1 Buried Warning and Identification Tape

Provide buried utility lines with utility identification tape. Bury tape **12 inches** below finished grade; under pavements and slabs, bury tape **6 inches** below top of subgrade.

#### 3.9.2 Buried Detection Wire

Bury detection wire directly above non-metallic piping at a distance not to exceed **12 inches** above the top of pipe. Extend the wire continuously and unbroken, from manhole to manhole. Terminate the ends of the wire inside the manholes at each end of the pipe, with a minimum of **3 feet** of wire, coiled, remaining accessible in each manhole. Furnish insulated wire over its entire length. Install wires at manholes between the top of the corbel and the frame, and extend up through the chimney seal between the frame and the chimney seal. For force mains, terminate the wire in the valve pit at the pump station end of the pipe.

### 3.10 BACKFILLING AND COMPACTION

Place backfill adjacent to any and all types of structures, in successive horizontal layers of loose material not more than **8 inches** in depth. Compact to at least 90 percent laboratory maximum density for cohesive materials or 95 percent laboratory maximum density for cohesionless materials, to prevent wedging action or eccentric loading upon or against the structure. Backfill material must be within the range of -2 to +2 percent of optimum moisture content at the time of compaction.

Prepare ground surface on which backfill is to be placed and provide compaction requirements for backfill materials in conformance with the applicable portions of paragraphs GROUND SURFACE PREPARATION. Finish compaction by sheepsfoot rollers, pneumatic-tired rollers, steel-wheeled rollers, vibratory compactors, or other approved equipment.

#### 3.10.1 Trench Backfill

Backfill trenches to the grade shown. Backfill the trench to **2 feet** above the top of pipe prior to performing the required pressure tests. Leave the joints and couplings uncovered during the pressure test. Do not backfill the trench until all specified tests are performed.

##### 3.10.1.1 Replacement of Unyielding Material

Replace unyielding material removed from the bottom of the trench with select granular material or initial backfill material.

##### 3.10.1.2 Replacement of Unstable Material

Replace unstable material removed from the bottom of the trench or excavation with select granular material placed in layers not exceeding **6 inches** loose thickness.



### 3.10.1.3 Bedding and Initial Backfill

Place initial backfill material and compact it with approved tampers to a height of at least **one foot** above the utility pipe or conduit. Bring up the backfill evenly on both sides of the pipe for the full length of the pipe. Take care to ensure thorough compaction of the fill under the haunches of the pipe. Except as specified otherwise in the individual piping section, provide bedding for buried piping in accordance with **AWWA C600**, Type 4, except as specified herein. Compact backfill to top of pipe to 95 percent of **ASTM D698** maximum density. Provide plastic piping with bedding to spring line of pipe. Provide materials as follows:

#### 3.10.1.3.1 Class I

Angular, **0.25 to 1.5 inch**, graded stone, including a number of fill materials that have regional significance such as coral, slag, cinders, crushed stone, and crushed shells.

#### 3.10.1.3.2 Class II

Coarse sands and gravels with maximum particle size of **1.5 inch**, including various graded sands and gravels containing small percentages of fines, generally granular and noncohesive, either wet or dry. Soil Types GW, GP, SW, and SP are included in this class as specified in **ASTM D2487**.

#### 3.10.1.3.3 Gravel and Crushed Stone

Clean, coarsely graded natural gravel, crushed stone or a combination thereof identified as **Soil-aggregate subbase** in accordance with **NCDOT standards**.

#### 3.10.1.4 Final Backfill

Fill the remainder of the trench, except for special materials for roadways, railroads and airfields, with satisfactory material. Place backfill material and compact as follows:

##### 3.10.1.4.1 Roadways, Railroads, and Airfields

Place backfill up to the required elevation as specified. Do not permit water flooding or jetting methods of compaction.

##### 3.10.1.4.2 Sidewalks, Turfed or Seeded Areas and Miscellaneous Areas

Deposit backfill in layers of a maximum of **12 inches** loose thickness, and compact it to 85 percent maximum density for cohesive soils and 90 percent maximum density for cohesionless soils. Do not permit compaction by water flooding or jetting. Apply this requirement to all other areas not specifically designated above.

### 3.10.2 Backfill for Appurtenances

After the manhole, catchbasin, inlet, or similar structure has been constructed and the concrete has been allowed to cure for **3** days, place backfill in such a manner that the structure is not be damaged by the shock of falling earth. Deposit the backfill material, compact it as specified for final backfill, and bring up the backfill evenly on all sides of the structure to prevent eccentric loading and excessive stress.

### 3.11 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

Special requirements for both excavation and backfill relating to the specific utilities are as follows:

#### 3.11.1 Heat Distribution System

Free initial backfill material of stones larger than  $1/4$  inch in any dimension.

#### 3.11.2 Electrical Distribution System

Provide a minimum cover of 24 inches from the finished grade to direct burial cable and conduit or duct line, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 3.11.3 Rip-Rap Construction

Construct rip-rap in accordance with NCDOT Standard, in the areas indicated. Trim and dress indicated areas to conform to cross sections, lines and grades shown within a tolerance of 0.1 foot.

##### 3.11.3.1 Bedding Placement

Spread filter fabric bedding material uniformly to a thickness of at least 3 inches on prepared subgrade as indicated. Compaction of bedding is not required. Finish bedding to present even surface free from mounds and windrows.

##### 3.11.3.2 Stone Placement

Place rock for rip-rap on prepared bedding material to produce a well graded mass with the minimum practicable percentage of voids in conformance with lines and grades indicated. Distribute larger rock fragments, with dimensions extending the full depth of the rip-rap throughout the entire mass and eliminate "pockets" of small rock fragments. Rearrange individual pieces by mechanical equipment or by hand as necessary to obtain the distribution of fragment sizes specified above.

### 3.12 EMBANKMENTS

#### 3.12.1 Earth Embankments

Construct earth embankments from satisfactory materials free of organic or frozen material and rocks with any dimension greater than 3 inches. Place the material in successive horizontal layers of loose material not more than 8 inches in depth. Spread each layer uniformly on a soil surface that has been moistened or aerated as necessary, and scarified or otherwise broken up so that the fill will bond with the surface on which it is placed. After spreading, plow, disk, or otherwise break up each layer; moisten or aerate as necessary; thoroughly mix; and compact to at least 90 percent laboratory maximum density for cohesive materials or 95 percent laboratory maximum density for cohesionless materials. Backfill material must be within the range of -2 to +2 percent of optimum moisture content at the time of compaction.

Compaction requirements for the upper portion of earth embankments forming subgrade for pavements are identical with those requirements specified in paragraph SUBGRADE PREPARATION. Finish compaction by sheepsfoot rollers,

pneumatic-tired rollers, steel-wheeled rollers, vibratory compactors, or other approved equipment.

### 3.13 SUBGRADE PREPARATION

#### 3.13.1 Proof Rolling

Finish proof rolling on an exposed subgrade free of surface water (wet conditions resulting from rainfall) which would promote degradation of an otherwise acceptable subgrade. After stripping, proof roll the existing subgrade of the pavement areas with six passes of a dump truck loaded with 4 cubic yards of soil. Operate the truck in a systematic manner to ensure the number of passes over all areas, and at speeds between 2-1/2 to 3-1/2 mph. When proof rolling, provide one-half of the passes made with the roller in a direction perpendicular to the other passes. Notify the Contracting Officer a minimum of 3 days prior to proof rolling. Perform proof rolling in the presence of the Contracting Officer.

#### 3.13.2 Construction

Shape subgrade to line, grade, and cross section, and compact as specified. Include plowing, disking, and any moistening or aerating required to obtain specified compaction for this operation. Remove soft or otherwise unsatisfactory material and replace with satisfactory excavated material or other approved material as directed. Excavate rock encountered in the cut section to a depth of 6 inches below finished grade for the subgrade. Bring up low areas resulting from removal of unsatisfactory material or excavation of rock to required grade with satisfactory materials, and shape the entire subgrade to line, grade, and cross section and compact as specified. Do not vary the elevation of the finish subgrade more than 0.05 foot from the established grade and cross section.

#### 3.13.3 Compaction

Finish compaction by sheepsfoot rollers, pneumatic-tired rollers, steel-wheeled rollers, vibratory compactors, or other approved equipment. Except for paved areas and railroads, compact each layer of the embankment to at least 85 percent of laboratory maximum density.

##### 3.13.3.1 Subgrade for Pavements

Compact subgrade for pavements to at least 95 percentage laboratory maximum density for the depth below the surface of the pavement shown. When more than one soil classification is present in the subgrade, thoroughly blend, reshape, and compact the top 12 inch of subgrade.

##### 3.13.3.2 Subgrade for Shoulders

Compact subgrade for shoulders to at least 90 percentage laboratory maximum density.

### 3.14 SHOULDER CONSTRUCTION

Construct shoulders of satisfactory excavated or borrow material or as otherwise shown or specified.. Submit advanced notice on shoulder construction for rigid pavements. Construct shoulders immediately after adjacent paving is complete. In the case of rigid pavements, do not construct shoulders until permission of the Contracting Officer has been obtained. Compact the entire shoulder area to at least the percentage of

maximum density as specified in paragraph SUBGRADE PREPARATION above, for specific ranges of depth below the surface of the shoulder. Finish compaction by sheepsfoot rollers, pneumatic-tired rollers, steel-wheeled rollers, vibratory compactors, or other approved equipment. Finish shoulder construction in proper sequence in such a manner that adjacent ditches will be drained effectively and that no damage of any kind is done to the adjacent completed pavement. Align the completed shoulders true to grade and shaped to drain in conformity with the cross section shown.

### 3.15 FINISHING

Finish the surface of excavations, embankments, and subgrades to a smooth and compact surface in accordance with the lines, grades, and cross sections or elevations shown. Provide the degree of finish for graded areas within 0.1 foot of the grades and elevations indicated except that the degree of finish for subgrades specified in paragraph SUBGRADE PREPARATION. Finish gutters and ditches in a manner that will result in effective drainage. Finish the surface of areas to be turfed from settlement or washing to a smoothness suitable for the application of turfing materials. Repair graded, topsoiled, or backfilled areas prior to acceptance of the work, and re-established grades to the required elevations and slopes.

#### 3.15.1 Subgrade and Embankments

During construction, keep embankments and excavations shaped and drained. Maintain ditches and drains along subgrade to drain effectively at all times. Do not disturb the finished subgrade by traffic or other operation. Protect and maintain the finished subgrade in a satisfactory condition until ballast, subbase, base, or pavement is placed. Do not permit the storage or stockpiling of materials on the finished subgrade. Do not lay subbase, base course, ballast, or pavement until the subgrade has been checked and approved, and in no case place subbase, base, surfacing, pavement, or ballast on a muddy, spongy, or frozen subgrade.

#### 3.15.2 Capillary Water Barrier

Place a capillary water barrier under concrete floor and area-way slabs grade directly on the subgrade and compact with a minimum of two passes of a hand-operated plate-type vibratory compactor.

#### 3.15.3 Grading Around Structures

Construct areas within 5 feet outside of each building and structure line true-to-grade, shape to drain, and maintain free of trash and debris until final inspection has been completed and the work has been accepted.

### 3.16 PLACING TOPSOIL

On areas to receive topsoil, prepare the compacted subgrade soil to a 2 inches depth for bonding of topsoil with subsoil. Spread topsoil evenly to a thickness of 3 inch and grade to the elevations and slopes shown. Do not spread topsoil when frozen or excessively wet or dry. Obtain material required for topsoil in excess of that produced by excavation within the grading limits from offsite areas.

### 3.17 TESTING

Perform testing by a Corps validated commercial testing laboratory or the

Contractor's validated testing facility. Submit qualifications of the Corps validated commercial testing laboratory or the Contractor's validated testing facilities. If the Contractor elects to establish testing facilities, do not permit work requiring testing until the Contractor's facilities have been inspected, Corps validated and approved by the Contracting Officer.

- a. Determine field in-place density in accordance with [ASTM D1556/D1556M](#).
- b. Check the calibration curves furnished with the moisture gauges along with density calibration checks as described in [ASTM D6938](#); check the calibration of both the density and moisture gauges at the beginning of a job on each different type of material encountered and at intervals as directed by the Contracting Officer.
- c. Perform tests on recompacted areas to determine conformance with specification requirements. Appoint a registered professional civil engineer to certify inspections and test results. These certifications shall state that the tests and observations were performed by or under the direct supervision of the engineer and that the results are representative of the materials or conditions being certified by the tests. The following number of tests, if performed at the appropriate time, will be the minimum acceptable for each type operation.

#### 3.17.1 Fill and Backfill Material Gradation

One test per 100 cubic yards stockpiled or in-place source material. Determine gradation of fill and backfill material in accordance with [ASTM C136/C136M](#).

#### 3.17.2 In-Place Densities

- a. One test per 1000 square feet, or fraction thereof, of each lift of fill or backfill areas compacted by other than hand-operated machines.
- b. One test per 1000 square feet, or fraction thereof, of each lift of fill or backfill areas compacted by hand-operated machines.
- c. One test per 500 linear feet, or fraction thereof, of each lift of embankment or backfill for roads.

#### 3.17.3 Check Tests on In-Place Densities

If [ASTM D6938](#) is used, check in-place densities by [ASTM D1556/D1556M](#) as follows:

- a. One check test per lift for each 1000 square feet, or fraction thereof, of each lift of fill or backfill compacted by other than hand-operated machines.
- b. One check test per lift for each 1000 square feet, of fill or backfill areas compacted by hand-operated machines.
- c. One check test per lift for each 500 linear feet, or fraction thereof, of embankment or backfill for roads.

#### 3.17.4 Moisture Contents

In the stockpile, excavation, or borrow areas, perform a minimum of two

tests per day per type of material or source of material being placed during stable weather conditions. During unstable weather, perform tests as dictated by local conditions and approved by the Contracting Officer.

#### 3.17.5 Optimum Moisture and Laboratory Maximum Density

Perform tests for each type material or source of material including borrow material to determine the optimum moisture and laboratory maximum density values. One representative test per 100 cubic yards of fill and backfill, or when any change in material occurs which may affect the optimum moisture content or laboratory maximum density.

#### 3.17.6 Tolerance Tests for Subgrades

Perform continuous checks on the degree of finish specified in paragraph SUBGRADE PREPARATION during construction of the subgrades.

#### 3.17.7 Displacement of Sewers

After other required tests have been performed and the trench backfill compacted to the finished grade surface, inspect the pipe to determine whether significant displacement has occurred. Conduct this inspection in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Inspect pipe sizes larger than 36 inches, while inspecting smaller diameter pipe by shining a light or laser between manholes or manhole locations, or by the use of television cameras passed through the pipe. If, in the judgment of the Contracting Officer, the interior of the pipe shows poor alignment or any other defects that would cause improper functioning of the system, replace or repair the defects as directed at no additional cost to the Government.

#### 3.18 DISPOSITION OF SURPLUS MATERIAL

Remove surplus material or other soil material not required or suitable for filling or backfilling, and brush, refuse, stumps, roots, and timber. Dispose of all material as specified in Section 01 57 19 TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 31 11 00

CLEARING AND GRUBBING  
11/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

DODI 4150.07 (2019) DOD Pest Management Program

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Herbicide Application Plan

SD-03 Product Data

Tree Wound Paint

Herbicides; G

SD-07 Certificates

Qualifications; G

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL

1.3.1 Regulatory Requirements

Comply with DODI 4150.07 for requirements on Contractor's licensing, certification, and record keeping. Maintain daily records using the Pest Management Maintenance Record, DD Form 1532-1, or a computer generated equivalent. These forms may be obtained from the main web site:  
<http://www.dtic.mil/whs/directives/forms/eforms/dd1532-1.pdf>

1.3.2 Qualifications

For the application of herbicides, use the services of an applicator who is commercially certified in the state where the work is to be performed as required by DODI 4150.07. Submit a copy of the pesticide applicator certificates.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the site, and handle in a manner which will maintain the materials in their original manufactured or fabricated condition until ready for use.

##### 1.4.1 Storage

Storage of herbicides on the installation will not be permitted unless it is written into the contract.

##### 1.4.2 Handling

Handle herbicides in accordance with the manufacturer's label and Safety Data Sheet (SDS), preventing contamination by dirt, water, and organic material. Protect herbicides from weather elements as recommended by the manufacturer's label and SDS. Spill kits must be maintained on herbicide control vehicles. Mixing of herbicides on the installation will not be permitted unless it is written into the contract.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MATERIALS

###### 2.1.1 Tree Wound Paint

Use bituminous based paint from standard manufacture specially formulated for tree wounds.

###### 2.1.2 Herbicide

Provide herbicides currently registered by the EPA or approved for such use by the appropriate agency of the host county and approved by the Contracting Officer. Select a herbicide that is suitable for the climatic conditions at the project site. Submit manufacturer's label and SDS for herbicides proposed for use.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.1 PREPARATION

###### 3.1.1 Herbicide Application Plan

Prior to commencing application of herbicide, submit a herbicide application plan with proposed sequence of treatment work including dates and times of application. Include the herbicide trade name, EPA registration number, chemical composition, formulation, application rate of active ingredients, method of application, area or volume treated, and amount applied. Include a copy of the pesticide applicator certificates.

###### 3.1.2 Protection

###### 3.1.2.1 Roads and Walks

Keep roads and walks free of dirt and debris at all times.

###### 3.1.2.2 Trees, Shrubs, and Existing Facilities

Protect trees and vegetation to be left standing from damage incident to



clearing, grubbing, and construction operations by the erection of barriers or by such other means as the circumstances require.

#### 3.1.2.3 Utility Lines

Protect existing utility lines that are indicated to remain from damage. Notify the Contracting Officer immediately of damage to or an encounter with an unknown existing utility line. The Contractor is responsible for the repair of damage to existing utility lines that are indicated or made known to the Contractor prior to start of clearing and grubbing operations. When utility lines which are to be removed are encountered within the area of operations, notify the Contracting Officer in ample time to minimize interruption of the service. Refer to Section 01 30 00 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS and Section 01 57 19 TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS for additional utility protection.

### 3.2 Application

#### 3.2.1 Herbicide Application

Adhere to safety precautions as recommended by the manufacturer concerning handling and application of the herbicide.

##### 3.2.1.1 Clean Up, Disposal, And Protection

Once application has been completed, proceed with clean up and protection of the site without delay. Clean the site of all material associated with the treatment measures, according to label instructions, and as indicated. Remove and dispose of excess and waste material off Government property.

##### 3.2.1.1.1 Disposal of Herbicide

Dispose of residual herbicides and containers off Government property, and in accordance with the approved disposal plan, label instructions and EPA requirements.

### 3.3 CLEARING

Clearing consists of the felling, trimming, and cutting of trees into sections and the satisfactory disposal of the trees and other vegetation designated for removal, including downed timber, snags, brush, and rubbish occurring within the areas to be cleared. Clearing also includes the removal and disposal of structures that obstruct, encroach upon, or otherwise obstruct the work. Cut off flush with or below the original ground surface trees, stumps, roots, brush, and other vegetation in areas to be cleared, except such trees and vegetation as may be indicated or directed to be left standing. Trim dead branches 1-1/2 inches or more in diameter on trees designated to be left standing within the cleared areas and trim all branches to the heights indicated or directed. Neatly cut close to the bole of the tree or main branches, limbs and branches to be trimmed. Paint, with an approved tree-wound paint, cuts more than 1-1/2 inches in diameter. Apply herbicide in accordance with the manufacturer's label to the top surface of stumps designated not to be removed.

#### 3.3.1 Grubbing

Grubbing consists of the removal and disposal of stumps, roots larger than 3 inches in diameter, and matted roots from the designated grubbing areas. Remove material to be grubbed, together with logs and other organic or

metallic debris not suitable for foundation purposes, to a depth of not less than 18 inches below the original surface level of the ground in areas indicated to be grubbed and in areas indicated as construction areas under this contract, such as areas for buildings, and areas to be paved. Fill depressions made by grubbing with suitable material and compact to make the surface conform with the original adjacent surface of the ground.

### 3.4 DISPOSAL OF MATERIALS

Dispose of excess materials in accordance with the approved solid waste management permit and include those materials in the solid waste management report.

All wood or wood like materials, except for salable timber, remaining from clearing, pruning or grubbing such as limbs, tree tops, roots, stumps, logs, rotten wood, and other similiar materials shall become the property of the Contractor and disposed of as specified. All non-saleable timber and wood or wood like materials remaining from timber harvesting such as limbs, tree tops, roots, stumps, logs, rotten wood, and other similiar materials shall become the property of the Contractor and disposed as specified.

### 3.5 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

#### 3.5.1 Herbicides

Upon completion of this work, submit the Pest Management Report DD Form 1532, or an equivalent computer product, to the Integrated Pest Management Coordinator. This form identifies the type of operation, brand name and manufacturer of herbicide, formulation, concentration or rate of application used.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 32 11 23

AGGREGATE BASE COURSES  
08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| AASHTO T 88  | (2013) Standard Method of Test for Particle Size Analysis of Soils   |
| AASHTO T 180 | (2017) Standard Method of Test for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 4.54-kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457-mm (18-in.) Drop |
| AASHTO T 224 | (2010) Standard Method of Test for Correction for Coarse Particles in the Soil Compaction Test                                   |

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| ASTM C29/C29M   | (2017a) Standard Test Method for Bulk Density ("Unit Weight") and Voids in Aggregate   |
| ASTM C88        | (2018) Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate                                      |
| ASTM C117       | (2017) Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75-um (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing                                |
| ASTM C127       | (2015) Standard Test Method for Density, Relative Density (Specific Gravity), and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate                           |
| ASTM C128       | (2015) Standard Test Method for Density, Relative Density (Specific Gravity), and Absorption of Fine Aggregate                             |
| ASTM C131/C131M | (2020) Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine |
| ASTM C136/C136M | (2019) Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates   |

ASTM D75/D75M	(2019) Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D1556/D1556M	(2015; E 2016) Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D1557	(2012; E 2015) Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft <sup>3</sup> ) (2700 kN-m/m <sup>3</sup> )
ASTM D2167	(2015) Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method
ASTM D2487	(2017; E 2020) Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)
ASTM D4318	(2017; E 2018) Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D5821	(2013; R 2017) Standard Test Method for Determining the Percentage of Fractured Particles in Coarse Aggregate
ASTM D6938	(2017a) Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)
ASTM E11	(2020) Standard Specification for Woven Wire Test Sieve Cloth and Test Sieves

## 1.2 DEFINITIONS

For the purposes of this specification, the following definitions apply.

### 1.2.1 Aggregate Base Course

Aggregate base course (ABC) is well graded, durable aggregate uniformly moistened and mechanically stabilized by compaction.

### 1.2.2 Graded-Crushed Aggregate Base Course

Graded-crushed aggregate (GCA) base course is well graded, crushed, durable aggregate uniformly moistened and mechanically stabilized by compaction.

### 1.2.3 Degree of Compaction

Degree of compaction required, except as noted in the second sentence, is expressed as a percentage of the maximum laboratory dry density obtained by the test procedure presented in [ASTM D1557](#) abbreviated as a percent of laboratory maximum dry density. Since [ASTM D1557](#) applies only to soils that have 30 percent or less by weight of their particles retained on the [3/4 inch](#) sieve, the degree of compaction for material having more than 30

percent by weight of their particles retained on the 3/4 inch sieve will be expressed as a percentage of the laboratory maximum dry density in accordance with AASHTO T 180 Method D and corrected with AASHTO T 224.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-03 Product Data

Plant, Equipment, and Tools; G

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Initial Tests; G

In-Place Tests; G

### 1.4 EQUIPMENT, TOOLS, AND MACHINES

All plant, equipment, and tools used in the performance of the work will be subject to approval by the Contracting Officer before the work is started. Maintain all plant, equipment, and tools in satisfactory working condition at all times. Submit a list of proposed equipment, including descriptive data. Use equipment capable of minimizing segregation, producing the required compaction, meeting grade controls, thickness control, and smoothness requirements as set forth herein.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Sampling and testing are the responsibility of the Contractor. Perform sampling and testing using a laboratory approved in accordance with Section 01 45 00.10 10 QUALITY CONTROL. Work requiring testing will not be permitted until the testing laboratory has been inspected and approved. Test the materials to establish compliance with the specified requirements and perform testing at the specified frequency. The Contracting Officer may specify the time and location of the tests. Furnish copies of test results to the Contracting Officer within 24 hours of completion of the tests.

#### 1.5.1 Sampling

Take samples for laboratory testing in conformance with ASTM D75/D75M. When deemed necessary, the sampling will be observed by the Contracting Officer.

#### 1.5.2 Tests

##### 1.5.2.1 Sieve Analysis

Perform sieve analysis in conformance with ASTM C117 and ASTM C136/C136M using sieves conforming to ASTM E11. Perform particle-size analysis of the soils in conformance with AASHTO T 88.

#### 1.5.2.2 Liquid Limit and Plasticity Index

Determine liquid limit and plasticity index in accordance with [ASTM D4318](#).

#### 1.5.2.3 Moisture-Density Determinations

Determine the laboratory maximum dry density and optimum moisture content in accordance with paragraph DEGREE OF COMPACTION.

#### 1.5.2.4 Field Density Tests

Measure field density in accordance with [ASTM D1556/D1556M](#), [ASTM D2167](#) or [ASTM D6938](#). For the method presented in [ASTM D1556/D1556M](#) use the base plate as shown in the drawing. For the method presented in [ASTM D6938](#) check the calibration curves and adjust them, if necessary, using only the sand cone method as described in paragraph Calibration, of the ASTM publication. Tests performed in accordance with [ASTM D6938](#) result in a wet unit weight of soil and [ASTM D6938](#) will be used to determine the moisture content of the soil. Also check the calibration curves furnished with the moisture gauges along with density calibration checks as described in [ASTM D6938](#). Make the calibration checks of both the density and moisture gauges using the prepared containers of material method, as described in paragraph Calibration of [ASTM D6938](#), on each different type of material being tested at the beginning of a job and at intervals as directed. Submit calibration curves and related test results prior to using the device or equipment being calibrated.

#### 1.5.2.5 Wear Test

Perform wear tests on ABC course material in conformance with [ASTM C131/C131M](#).

#### 1.5.2.6 Soundness

Perform soundness tests on GCA in accordance with [ASTM C88](#).

#### 1.5.2.7 Weight of Slag

Determine weight per cubic foot of slag in accordance with [ASTM C29/C29M](#) on the ABC course material.

### 1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Perform construction when the atmospheric temperature is above 35 degrees F. When the temperature falls below 35 degrees F, protect all completed areas by approved methods against detrimental effects of freezing. Correct completed areas damaged by freezing, rainfall, or other weather conditions to meet specified requirements.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 AGGREGATES

Provide ABC consisting of clean, sound, durable particles of crushed stone, crushed gravel, crushed recycled concrete, angular sand, or other approved material. Provide ABC that is free of lumps of clay, organic matter, and other objectionable materials or coatings. The portion retained on the No. 4 sieve is known as coarse aggregate; that portion passing the No. 4 sieve is known as fine aggregate. When the coarse and fine aggregate is supplied

form more than one source, provide aggregate from each source that meets the specified requirements.

#### 2.1.1.1 Coarse Aggregate

Provide coarse aggregates with angular particles of uniform density. Separately stockpile coarse aggregate supplied from more than one source.

- a. Crushed Gravel: Provide crushed gravel that has been manufactured by crushing gravels and that meets all the requirements specified below.
- b. Crushed Stone: Provide crushed stone consisting of freshly mined quarry rock, meeting all the requirements specified below.
- c. Crushed Recycled Concrete: Provide crushed recycled concrete consisting of previously hardened portland cement concrete or other concrete containing pozzolanic binder material. Provide recycled concrete that is free of all reinforcing steel, bituminous concrete surfacing, and any other foreign material and that has been crushed and processed to meet the required gradations for coarse aggregate. Reject recycled concrete aggregate exceeding this value. Provide crushed recycled concrete that meets all other applicable requirements specified below.
- d. Crushed Slag: Provide crushed slag that is an air-cooled blast-furnace product having an air dry unit weight of not less than 70 pcf as determined by [ASTM C29/C29M](#), and meets all the requirements specified below.

##### 2.1.1.1.1 Aggregate Base Course

The percentage of loss of ABC coarse aggregate must not exceed 50 percent when tested in accordance with [ASTM C131/C131M](#). Provide aggregate that contains no more than 30 percent flat and elongated particles. A flat particle is one having a ratio of width to thickness greater than 3; an elongated particle is one having a ratio of length to width greater than 3. In the portion retained on each sieve specified, the crushed aggregates must contain at least 50 percent by weight of crushed pieces having two or more freshly fractured faces determined in accordance with [ASTM D5821](#). When two fractures are contiguous, the angle between planes of the fractures must be at least 30 degrees in order to count as two fractured faces. Manufacture crushed gravel from gravel particles 50 percent of which, by weight, are retained on the maximum size sieve listed in TABLE 1.

#### 2.1.2 Fine Aggregate

Provide fine aggregates consisting of angular particles of uniform density.

##### 2.1.2.1 Aggregate Base Course

Provide ABC fine aggregate that consists of screenings, angular sand, crushed recycled concrete fines, or other finely divided mineral matter processed or naturally combined with the coarse aggregate.

#### 2.1.3 Gradation Requirements

Apply the specified gradation requirements to the completed base course. Provide aggregates that are continuously well graded within the limits specified in TABLE 1. Use sieves that conform to [ASTM E11](#).

TABLE 1. GRADATION OF AGGREGATES

Percentage by Weight Passing Square-Mesh Sieve

Sieve Designation	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3
-----	-----	-----	-----
2 inch	100	----	----
1-1/2 inch	70-100	100	----
1 inch	45-80	60-100	100
1/2 inch	30-60	30-65	40-70
No. 4	20-50	20-50	20-50
No. 10	15-40	15-40	15-40
No. 40	5-25	5-25	5-25
No. 200	0-8	0-8	0-8

NOTE 1: Particles having diameters less than 0.02 mm must not be in excess of 3 percent by weight of the total sample tested as determined in accordance with **AASHTO T 88**.

NOTE 2: The values are based on aggregates of uniform specific gravity. If materials from different sources are used for the coarse and fine aggregates, test the materials in accordance with **ASTM C127** and **ASTM C128** to determine their specific gravities. Correct the percentages passing the various sieves as directed by the Contracting Officer if the specific gravities vary by more than 10 percent.

## 2.2 LIQUID LIMIT AND PLASTICITY INDEX

Apply liquid limit and plasticity index requirements to the completed course and to any component that is blended to meet the required gradation. The portion of any component or of the completed course passing the **No. 40** sieve must be either nonplastic or have a liquid limit not greater than 25 and a plasticity index not greater than 5.

## 2.3 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

### 2.3.1 Initial Tests

Perform one of each of the following tests, on the proposed material prior to commencing construction, to demonstrate that the proposed material meets all specified requirements when furnished. Complete this testing for each source if materials from more than one source are proposed.

- Sieve Analysis.
- Liquid limit and plasticity index.
- Moisture-density relationship.
- Wear.

Submit certified copies of test results for approval not less than 30 days before material is required for the work.

### 2.3.2 Approval of Material

Tentative approval of material will be based on initial test results.



## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

When the ABC is constructed in more than one layer, clean the previously constructed layer of loose and foreign matter by sweeping with power sweepers or power brooms, except that hand brooms may be used in areas where power cleaning is not practicable. Provide adequate drainage during the entire period of construction to prevent water from collecting or standing on the working area.

### 3.2 OPERATION OF AGGREGATE SOURCES

Condition aggregate sources on private lands in accordance with local laws or authorities.

### 3.3 STOCKPILING MATERIAL

Clear and level storage sites prior to stockpiling of material. Stockpile all materials, including approved material available from excavation and grading, in the manner and at the locations designated. Stockpile aggregates on the cleared and leveled areas designated by the Contracting Officer to prevent segregation. Stockpile materials obtained from different sources separately.

### 3.4 PREPARATION OF UNDERLYING COURSE OR SUBGRADE

Clean the underlying course or subgrade of all foreign substances prior to constructing the base course(s). Do not construct base course(s) on underlying course or subgrade that is frozen. Construct the surface of the underlying course or subgrade to meet specified compaction and surface tolerances. Correct ruts or soft yielding spots in the underlying courses, areas having inadequate compaction, and deviations of the surface from the specified requirements set forth herein by loosening and removing soft or unsatisfactory material and adding approved material, reshaping to line and grade, and recompacting to specified density requirements. For cohesionless underlying courses or subgrades containing sands or gravels, as defined in [ASTM D2487](#), stabilize the surface prior to placement of the base course(s). Stabilize by mixing ABC into the underlying course and compacting by approved methods. Consider the stabilized material as part of the underlying course and meet all requirements of the underlying course. Do not allow traffic or other operations to disturb the finished underlying course and maintain in a satisfactory condition until the base course is placed.

### 3.5 GRADE CONTROL

Provide a finished and completed base course conforming to the lines, grades, and cross sections shown. Place line and grade stakes as necessary for control.

### 3.6 MIXING AND PLACING MATERIALS

Mix the coarse and fine aggregates in a stationary plant. Make adjustments in mixing procedures or in equipment, as directed, to obtain true grades, to minimize segregation or degradation, to obtain the required water content, and to insure a satisfactory base course meeting all requirements of this specification. Place the mixed material on the prepared subgrade

or subbase in layers of uniform thickness with an approved spreader. Place the layers so that when compacted they will be true to the grades or levels required with the least possible surface disturbance. Where the base course is placed in more than one layer, clean the previously constructed layers of loose and foreign matter by sweeping with power sweepers, power brooms, or hand brooms, as directed. Make adjustments in placing procedures or equipment as may be directed by the Contracting Officer to obtain true grades, to minimize segregation and degradation, to adjust the water content, and to insure an acceptable base course.

### 3.7 LAYER THICKNESS

Compact the completed base course to the thickness indicated. No individual layer may be thicker than 6 inches nor be thinner than 3 inches in compacted thickness. Compact the base course(s) to a total thickness that is within 1/2 inch of the thickness indicated. Where the measured thickness is more than 1/2 inch deficient, correct such areas by scarifying, adding new material of proper gradation, reblading, and recompacting as directed. Where the measured thickness is more than 1/2 inch thicker than indicated, the course will be considered as conforming to the specified thickness requirements. The average job thickness will be the average of all thickness measurements taken for the job and must be within 1/4 inch of the thickness indicated. Measure the total thickness of the base course at intervals of one measurement for each 500 square yards of base course. Measure total thickness using 3 inch diameter test holes penetrating the base course.

### 3.8 COMPACTION

Compact each layer of the base course, as specified, with approved compaction equipment. Maintain water content during the compaction procedure to within plus or minus 2 percent of the optimum water content determined from laboratory tests as specified in this Section. Begin rolling at the outside edge of the surface and proceed to the center, overlapping on successive trips at least one-half the width of the roller. Slightly vary the length of alternate trips of the roller. Adjust speed of the roller as needed so that displacement of the aggregate does not occur. Compact mixture with hand-operated power tampers in all places not accessible to the rollers. Continue compaction until each layer is compacted through the full depth to at least 100 percent of laboratory maximum density. Make such adjustments in compacting or finishing procedures as may be directed by the Contracting Officer to obtain true grades, to minimize segregation and degradation, to reduce or increase water content, and to ensure a satisfactory base course. Remove any materials found to be unsatisfactory and replace with satisfactory material or rework, as directed, to meet the requirements of this specification.

### 3.9 PROOF ROLLING

In addition to the compaction specified, proof roll areas coverages of a heavy pneumatic-tired roller having four or more tires abreast, each tire loaded to a minimum of 30,000 pounds and inflated to a minimum of 125 psi. A coverage is defined as the application of one tire print over the designated area. In the areas designated, apply proof rolling to the top of the underlying material on which the base course is laid and to the top of each layer of base course. Maintain water content of the underlying material and each layer of the base course as specified in Paragraph COMPACTION from start of compaction to completion of proof rolling of that layer. Remove any base course materials or any underlying materials that

produce unsatisfactory results by proof rolling and replace with satisfactory materials. Then recompact and proof roll to meet these specifications.

### 3.10 EDGES OF BASE COURSE

Place the base course(s) so that the completed section will be a minimum of **2 feet** wider, on all sides, than the next layer that will be placed above it. Place approved material along the outer edges of the base course in sufficient quantity to compact to the thickness of the course being constructed. When the course is being constructed in two or more layers, simultaneously roll and compact at least a **2 foot** width of this shoulder material with the rolling and compacting of each layer of the base course, as directed.

### 3.11 FINISHING

Finish the surface of the top layer of base course after final compaction and proof rolling by cutting any overbuild to grade and rolling with a steel-wheeled roller. Do not add thin layers of material to the top layer of base course to meet grade. If the elevation of the top layer of base course is **1/2 inch** or more below grade, scarify the top layer to a depth of at least **3 inches** and blend new material in and compact to bring to grade. Make adjustments to rolling and finishing procedures as directed by the Contracting Officer to minimize segregation and degradation, obtain grades, maintain moisture content, and insure an acceptable base course. Should the surface become rough, corrugated, uneven in texture, or traffic marked prior to completion, scarify the unsatisfactory portion and rework and recompact it or replace as directed.

### 3.12 SMOOTHNESS TEST

Construct the top layer so that the surface shows no deviations in excess of **3/8 inch** when tested with a **12 foot** straightedge. Take measurements in successive positions parallel to the centerline of the area to be paved. Also take measurements perpendicular to the centerline at **50 foot** intervals. Correct deviations exceeding this amount by removing material and replacing with new material, or by reworking existing material and compacting it to meet these specifications.

### 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### 3.13.1 In-Place Tests

Perform each of the following tests on samples taken from the placed and compacted ABC. Take samples and test at the rates indicated. Perform sampling and testing of recycled concrete aggregate at twice the specified frequency until the material uniformity is established.

- a. Perform density tests on every lift of material placed and at a frequency of one set of tests for every 250 **square yards**, or portion thereof, of completed area.
- b. Perform sieve analysis on every lift of material placed and at a frequency of one sieve analysis for every 500 **square yards**, or portion thereof, of material placed.
- c. Perform liquid limit and plasticity index tests at the same frequency as the sieve analysis.

- d. Measure the thickness of the base course at intervals providing at least one measurement for each 500 square yards of base course or part thereof. Measure the thickness using test holes, at least 3 inch in diameter through the base course.

#### 3.13.2 Approval of Material

Final approval of the materials will be based on tests for gradation, liquid limit, and plasticity index performed on samples taken from the completed and fully compacted course(s).

#### 3.14 TRAFFIC

Do not allow traffic on the completed base course.

#### 3.15 MAINTENANCE

Maintain the base course in a satisfactory condition until the full pavement section is completed and accepted. Immediately repair any defects and repeat repairs as often as necessary to keep the area intact. Retest any base course that was not paved over prior to the onset of winter to verify that it still complies with the requirements of this specification. Rework or replace any area of base course that is damaged as necessary to comply with this specification.

#### 3.16 DISPOSAL OF UNSATISFACTORY MATERIALS

Dispose of any unsuitable materials that have been removed outside the limits of Government-controlled land. No additional payments will be made for materials that have to be replaced.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 32 12 13

BITUMINOUS TACK AND PRIME COATS  
05/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)

AASHTO T 102 (2009; R 2013) Standard Method of Test for  
Spot Test of Asphaltic Materials

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D140/D140M (2016) Standard Practice for Sampling  
Asphalt Materials

ASTM D946/D946M (2020) Standard Specification for  
Penetration-Graded Asphalt Cement for Use  
in Pavement Construction

ASTM D977 (2019a; E 2019) Standard Specification for  
Emulsified Asphalt

ASTM D2026/D2026M (2015) Cutback Asphalt (Slow-Curing Type)

ASTM D2028/D2028M (2015) Cutback Asphalt (Rapid-Curing Type)

ASTM D2995 (1999; R 2009) Determining Application  
Rate of Bituminous Distributors

U.S. GREEN BUILDING COUNCIL (USGBC)

LEED BD+C (2009; R 2010) Leadership in Energy and  
Environmental Design(tm) Building Design  
and Construction (LEED-NC)

NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION (NCDOT)

NCDOT 2018 Standard Specifications for Roads and  
Structures

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

## Local/Regional Materials

### SD-06 Test Reports

### Sampling and Testing

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Certificates of compliance for asphalt materials delivered will be obtained and checked to ensure that specification requirements are met. Quantities of applied material will be determined. Payment will be for amount of residual asphalt applied. Tack coat materials will not be diluted. Prime coat materials when emulsions are used can be diluted on site with potable water up to 1 part emulsion to 1 part water.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Inspect the materials delivered to the site for contamination and damage. Unload and store the materials with a minimum of handling.

#### 1.5 EQUIPMENT, TOOLS AND MACHINES

##### 1.5.1 General Requirements

Equipment, tools and machines used in the work are subject to approval. Maintain in a satisfactory working condition at all times. Calibrate equipment such as asphalt distributors, scales, batching equipment, spreaders and similar equipment within 12 months of their use. If the calibration expires during project, recalibrate the equipment before work can continue.

##### 1.5.2 Bituminous Distributor

Provide a self propelled distributor with pneumatic tires of such size and number to prevent rutting, shoving or otherwise damaging the surface being sprayed. Calibrate the distributor in accordance with [ASTM D2995](#). Design and equip the distributor to spray the bituminous material in a uniform coverage at the specified temperature, at readily determined and controlled total liquid rates from [0.03 to 1.0 gallons per square yard](#), with a pressure range of [25 to 75 psi](#) and with an allowable variation from the specified rate of not more than plus or minus 5 percent, and at variable widths. Include with the distributor equipment a separate power unit for the bitumen pump, full-circulation spray bars, tachometer, pressure gauges, volume-measuring devices, adequate heaters for heating of materials to the proper application temperature, a thermometer for reading the temperature of tank contents, and a hand hose attachment suitable for applying bituminous material manually to areas inaccessible to the distributor. The distributor will be capable of circulating and agitating the bituminous material during the heating process.

##### 1.5.3 Heating Equipment for Storage Tanks

Use steam, electric, or hot oil heaters for heating the bituminous material. Provide steam heaters consisting of steam coils and equipment for producing steam, so designed that the steam cannot come in contact with the bituminous material. Fix an armored thermometer to the tank with a temperature range from [40 to 400 degrees F](#) so that the temperature of the bituminous material may be determined at all times.

#### 1.5.4 Power Brooms and Power Blowers

Use power brooms and power blowers suitable for cleaning the surfaces to which the bituminous coat is to be applied.

#### 1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Apply bituminous coat only when the surface to receive the bituminous coat is dry. A limited amount of moisture (approximately 0.03 gallon/square yard) can be sprayed on the surface of unbound material when prime coat is used to improve coverage and penetration of asphalt material. Apply bituminous coat only when the atmospheric temperature in the shade is 50 degrees F or above and when the temperature has not been below 35 degrees F for the 12 hours prior to application, unless otherwise directed.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PRIME COAT

Provide asphalt conforming to one of the following grades:

##### 2.1.1 Cutback Asphalt

Provide cutback asphalt conforming to ASTM D2026/D2026M, Grade SC-70 .

##### 2.1.2 Emulsified Asphalt

Provide emulsified asphalt conforming to ASTM D977, Type SS-1 . Asphalt emulsion can be diluted up to 1 part water to 1 part emulsion for prime coat use. Do not dilute asphalt emulsion for tack coat use.

#### 2.2 TACK COAT

##### 2.2.1 Asphalt Cement

Provide asphalt cement conforming to ASTM D946/D946M.

##### 2.2.2 Cutback Asphalt

Provide cutback asphalt conforming to ASTM D2028/D2028M.

##### 2.2.3 Emulsified Asphalt

Provide emulsified asphalt conforming to ASTM D977 . For prime coats the emulsified asphalt can be diluted with up to 1 part emulsion to 1 part water. No dilution is allowed for tack coat applications. The base asphalt used to manufacture the emulsion is required to show a negative spot when tested in accordance with AASHTO T 102 using standard naphtha.

##### 2.2.4 Local/Regional Materials

Use Local/Regional Materials or products extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within a 500 mile radius from the project site, if available from a minimum of three sources. Submit documentation indicating distance between manufacturing facility and the project site. Indicate distance of raw material origin from the project site. Indicate relative dollar value of local/regional materials to total dollar value of products included in project in accordance with LEED BD+C.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION OF SURFACE

Immediately before applying the bituminous coat, remove all loose material, dirt, clay, or other objectionable material from the surface to be treated by means of a power broom or blower supplemented with hand brooms. Apply treatment only when the surface is dry and clean.

### 3.2 APPLICATION RATE

The exact quantities within the range specified, which may be varied to suit field conditions, will be determined by the Contracting Officer.

#### 3.2.1 Tack Coat

Apply bituminous material for tack coat in accordance with NCDOT SSRS (NCDOT 2018), Section 605, Asphalt Tack Coat.

#### 3.2.2 Prime Coat

Apply bituminous material for prime coat in accordance with NCDOT SSRS (NCDOT 2018), Section 600, Asphalt Prime Coat.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

#### 3.3.1 General

Following preparation and subsequent inspection of the surface, apply the bituminous prime or tack coat with the bituminous distributor at the specified rate with uniform distribution over the surface to be treated. Properly treat all areas and spots, not capable of being sprayed with the distributor, with the hand spray. Until the succeeding layer of pavement is placed, maintain the surface by protecting the surface against damage and by repairing deficient areas at no additional cost to the Government. If required, spread clean dry sand to effectively blot up any excess bituminous material. No smoking, fires, or flames other than those from the heaters that are a part of the equipment are permitted within 25 feet of heating, distributing, and transferring operations of cutback materials. Prevent all traffic, except for paving equipment used in constructing the surfacing, from using the underlying material, whether primed or not, until the surfacing is completed. The bituminous coat requirements are described herein.

#### 3.3.2 Prime Coat

The prime coat is required if it will be at least 7 days before the asphalt mixture is constructed on the underlying (base course, etc.) compacted material. The type of liquid asphalt and application rate will be as specified herein. Protect the underlying layer from any damage (water, traffic, etc.) until the surfacing is placed. If the Contractor places the surfacing within seven days, the choice of protection measures or actions to be taken is at the Contractor's option. Repair (recompact or replace) damage to the underlying material caused by lack of, or inadequate, protection by approved methods at no additional cost to the Government. If the Contractor opts to use the prime coat, apply as soon as possible after consolidation of the underlying material. Apply the bituminous material uniformly over the surface to be treated at a pressure



range of 25 to 75 psi; the rate will be as specified above in paragraph APPLICATION RATE. To obtain uniform application of the prime coat on the surface treated at the junction of previous and subsequent applications, spread building paper on the surface for a sufficient distance back from the ends of each application to start and stop the prime coat on the paper and to ensure that all sprayers will operate at full force on the surface to be treated. Immediately after application remove and destroy the building paper.

### 3.3.3 Tack Coat

Apply tack coat at the locations shown on the drawings. A tack coat should be applied to every bound surface (asphalt or concrete pavement) that is being overlaid with asphalt mixture and at transverse and longitudinal joints. Apply the tack coat when the surface to be treated is clean and dry. Immediately following the preparation of the surface for treatment, apply the bituminous material by means of the bituminous distributor, within the limits of temperature specified herein and at a rate as specified above in paragraph APPLICATION RATE. Apply the bituminous material so that uniform distribution is obtained over the entire surface to be treated. Treat lightly coated areas and spots missed by the distributor by spraying with a hand wand or using other approved method. Following the application of bituminous material, allow the surface to cure without being disturbed for period of time necessary to permit setting of the tack coat. Apply the bituminous tack coat only as far in advance of the placing of the overlying layer as required for that day's operation. Maintain and protect the treated surface from damage until the succeeding course of pavement is placed.

### 3.4 CURING PERIOD

Following application of the bituminous material and prior to application of the succeeding layer of asphalt mixture allow the bituminous coat to cure and water or volatiles to evaporate prior to overlaying. Maintain the tacked surface in good condition until the succeeding layer of pavement is placed, by protecting the surface against damage and by repairing and recoating deficient areas. Allow the prime coat to cure without being disturbed for a period of at least 48 hours or longer, as may be necessary to attain penetration into the treated course. Furnish and spread enough sand to effectively blot up excess bituminous material.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Obtain certificates of compliance for all asphalt material delivered to the project. Obtain samples of the bituminous material under the supervision of the Contracting Officer. The sample may be retained and tested by the Government at no cost to the Contractor.

### 3.6 SAMPLING AND TESTING

Furnish certified copies of the manufacturer's test reports indicating temperature viscosity relationship for cutback asphalt or asphalt cement, compliance with applicable specified requirements, not less than 5 days before the material is required in the work.

#### 3.6.1 Sampling

Unless otherwise specified, sample bituminous material in accordance with ASTM D140/D140M.

### 3.6.2 Calibration Test

Furnish all equipment, materials, and labor necessary to calibrate the bituminous distributor. Calibrate using the approved job material and prior to applying the bituminous coat material to the prepared surface. Calibrate the bituminous distributor in accordance with [ASTM D2995](#).

### 3.6.3 Trial Applications

Before applying the spray application of tack or prime coat, apply three lengths of at least [100 feet](#) for the full width of the distributor bar to evaluate the amount of bituminous material that can be satisfactorily applied.

#### 3.6.3.1 Tack Coat Trial Application Rate

Unless otherwise authorized, apply the trial application rate of bituminous tack coat materials in the amount of [0.05 gallons per square yard](#). Make other trial applications using various amounts of material as may be deemed necessary.

#### 3.6.3.2 Prime Coat Trial Application Rate

Unless otherwise authorized, apply the trial application rate of bituminous materials in the amount of [0.15 gallon per square yard](#). Make other trial applications using various amounts of material as may be deemed necessary.

### 3.6.4 Sampling and Testing During Construction

Perform quality control sampling and testing as required in paragraph FIELD QUALITY CONTROL.

## 3.7 TRAFFIC CONTROLS

Keep traffic off surfaces freshly treated with bituminous material. Provide sufficient warning signs and barricades so that traffic will not travel over freshly treated surfaces.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 32 12 16

HOT-MIX ASPHALT (HMA) FOR ROADS  
08/09

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)

AASHTO M 156 (2013; R 2017) Standard Specification for Requirements for Mixing Plants for Hot-Mixed, Hot-Laid Bituminous Paving Mixtures

ASPHALT INSTITUTE (AI)

AI MS-2 (2015) Asphalt Mix Design Methods

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C117 (2017) Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75-um (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing

ASTM C127 (2015) Standard Test Method for Density, Relative Density (Specific Gravity), and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate

ASTM C128 (2015) Standard Test Method for Density, Relative Density (Specific Gravity), and Absorption of Fine Aggregate

ASTM C136/C136M (2019) Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates

ASTM C566 (2013) Standard Test Method for Total Evaporable Moisture Content of Aggregate by Drying

ASTM D1461 (2017) Standard Test Method for Moisture or Volatile Distillates in Asphalt Mixtures

ASTM D2172/D2172M (2017; E 2018) Standard Test Methods for Quantitative Extraction of Asphalt Binder from Asphalt Mixtures

ASTM D2950/D2950M (2014) Density of Bituminous Concrete in Place by Nuclear Methods

ASTM D3665 (2012; R 2017) Standard Practice for

Random Sampling of Construction Materials

ASTM D3666	(2016) Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Materials
ASTM D4125/D4125M	(2010) Asphalt Content of Bituminous Mixtures by the Nuclear Method
ASTM D5444	(2015) Mechanical Size Analysis of Extracted Aggregate
ASTM D6307	(2019) Standard Test Method for Asphalt Content of Asphalt Mixture by Ignition Method
ASTM D6925	(2014) Standard Test Method for Preparation and Determination of the Relative Density of Hot Mix Asphalt (HMA) Specimens by Means of the Superpave Gyratory Compactor
ASTM D6926	(2020) Standard Practice for Preparation of Asphalt Mixture Specimens Using Marshall Apparatus
ASTM D6927	(2015) Standard Test Method for Marshall Stability and Flow of Bituminous Mixtures

NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

NCDOT SSRS	(2018) Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures
NCDOT Asphalt QMS Manual	(2018) Asphalt Quality Management System (OMS) Manual

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00  
SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Mix Design; G

Quality Control; G

Material Acceptance; G

SD-04 Samples

Asphalt Cement Binder

Aggregates

SD-06 Test Reports

Aggregates; G

QC Monitoring

SD-07 Certificates

Asphalt Cement Binder; G

Testing Laboratory

### 1.3 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Do not place the hot-mix asphalt upon a wet surface or when the surface temperature of the underlying course is less than specified in Table 3. The temperature requirements may be waived by the Contracting Officer, if requested; however, meet all other requirements, including compaction.

Table 3. Surface Temperature Limitations of Underlying Course	
Mat Thickness, inches	Degrees F
3 or greater	40
Less than 3	45

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Perform the work consisting of pavement courses composed of mineral aggregate and asphalt material heated and mixed in a central mixing plant and placed on a prepared course. HMA designed and constructed in accordance with this section shall conform to the lines, grades, thicknesses, and typical cross sections indicated. Construct each course to the depth, section, or elevation required by the drawings and roll, finish, and approve it before the placement of the next course.

#### 2.1.1 Asphalt Mixing Plant

Plants used for the preparation of hot-mix asphalt shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M 156 with the following changes:

##### 2.1.1.1 Truck Scales

Weigh the asphalt mixture on approved, certified scales at the Contractor's expense. Inspect and seal scales at least annually by an approved calibration laboratory.

##### 2.1.1.2 Testing Facilities

Provide laboratory facilities at the plant for the use of the Government's acceptance testing and the Contractor's quality control testing.

##### 2.1.1.3 Inspection of Plant

Provide the Contracting Officer with access at all times, to all areas of

the plant for checking adequacy of equipment; inspecting operation of the plant; verifying weights, proportions, and material properties; checking the temperatures maintained in the preparation of the mixtures and for taking samples. Provide assistance as requested, for the Government to procure any desired samples.

#### 2.1.1.4 Storage bins

Use of storage bins for temporary storage of hot-mix asphalt will be permitted as follows:

- a. The asphalt mixture may be stored in non-insulated storage bins for a period of time not exceeding 3 hours.
- b. The asphalt mixture may be stored in insulated storage bins for a period of time not exceeding 8 hours. The mix drawn from bins shall meet the same requirements as mix loaded directly into trucks.

#### 2.1.2 Hauling Equipment

Provide trucks for hauling hot-mix asphalt having tight, clean, and smooth metal beds. To prevent the mixture from adhering to them, the truck beds shall be lightly coated with a minimum amount of paraffin oil, lime solution, or other approved material. Petroleum based products shall not be used as a release agent. Each truck shall have a suitable cover to protect the mixture from adverse weather. When necessary to ensure that the mixture will be delivered to the site at the specified temperature, truck beds shall be insulated or heated and covers (tarps) shall be securely fastened.

#### 2.1.3 Asphalt Pavers

Provide asphalt pavers which are self-propelled, with an activated screed, heated as necessary, and capable of spreading and finishing courses of hot-mix asphalt which will meet the specified thickness, smoothness, and grade. The paver shall have sufficient power to propel itself and the hauling equipment without adversely affecting the finished surface.

##### 2.1.3.1 Receiving Hopper

Provide paver with a receiving hopper of sufficient capacity to permit a uniform spreading operation and equipped with a distribution system to place the mixture uniformly in front of the screed without segregation. The screed shall effectively produce a finished surface of the required evenness and texture without tearing, shoving, or gouging the mixture.

##### 2.1.3.2 Automatic Grade Controls

Equip the paver with a control system capable of automatically maintaining the specified screed elevation. The control system shall be automatically actuated from either a reference line and/or through a system of mechanical sensors or sensor-directed mechanisms or devices which will maintain the paver screed at a predetermined transverse slope and at the proper elevation to obtain the required surface. The transverse slope controller shall be capable of maintaining the screed at the desired slope within plus or minus 0.1 percent. A transverse slope controller shall not be used to control grade. Provide controls capable of working in conjunction with any of the following attachments:

- a. Ski-type device of not less than 30 feet in length.
- b. Taut stringline set to grade.
- c. Short ski or shoe for joint matching.
- d. Laser control.

#### 2.1.4 Rollers

Rollers shall be in good condition and shall be operated at slow speeds to avoid displacement of the asphalt mixture. The number, type, and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the mixture to the required density while it is still in a workable condition. Do not use equipment which causes excessive crushing of the aggregate.

### 2.2 AGGREGATES

Provide aggregates consisting of crushed stone, crushed gravel, crushed slag, screenings, natural sand and mineral filler, as required. Submit sufficient materials to produce 200 lb of blended mixture for mix design verification. The portion of material retained on the No. 4 sieve is coarse aggregate. The portion of material passing the No. 4 sieve and retained on the No. 200 sieve is fine aggregate. The portion passing the No. 200 sieve is defined as mineral filler. Submit all aggregate test results and samples to the Contracting Officer at least 14 days prior to start of construction.

#### 2.2.1 Coarse Aggregate

Provide coarse aggregate in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 1012, Aggregate for Asphalt Pavements and Surface Treatments.

#### 2.2.2 Fine Aggregate

Fine aggregate shall be in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 1012, Aggregate for Asphalt Pavements and Surface Treatments

#### 2.2.3 Mineral Filler

Mineral filler shall be in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 1012, Aggregate for Asphalt Pavements and Surface Treatments

#### 2.2.4 Aggregate Gradation

The combined aggregate gradation shall conform to gradations specified in Table 4, when tested in accordance with ASTM C136/C136M and ASTM C117, and shall not vary from the low limit on one sieve to the high limit on the adjacent sieve or vice versa, but grade uniformly from coarse to fine.

Table 4. Aggregate Gradations			
Sieve Size, inch	Gradation 1 Percent Passing by Mass	Gradation 2 Percent Passing by Mass	Gradation 3 Percent Passing by Mass
1	100	---	---

Table 4. Aggregate Gradations			
Sieve Size, inch	Gradation 1 Percent Passing by Mass	Gradation 2 Percent Passing by Mass	Gradation 3 Percent Passing by Mass
3/4	76-96	100	---
1/2	68-88	76-96	100
3/8	60-82	69-89	76-96
No. 4	45-67	53-73	58-78
No. 8	32-54	38-60	40-60
No. 16	22-44	26-48	28-48
No. 30	15-35	18-38	18-38
No. 50	9-25	11-27	11-27
No. 100	6-18	6-18	6-18
No. 200	3-6	3-6	3-6

### 2.3 ASPHALT CEMENT BINDER

Provide asphaolt binder in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 1020, Asphalt Materials and Additives. Submit a 5 gallon sample for mix design verification

### 2.4 MIX DESIGN

Mis design shall be in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 610, Asphalt Concrete Plant Mix Pavements.

- a. Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S9.5C.
- b. Asphalt Concrete Intermediate Course Type

#### 2.4.1 JMF Requirements

Submit in writing the job mix formula for approval at least 14 days prior to the start of the test section including as a minimum:

- a. Percent passing each sieve size.
- b. Percent of asphalt cement.
- c. Percent of each aggregate and mineral filler to be used.
- d. Asphalt viscosity grade, penetration grade, or performance grade.
- e. Number of blows of hand-held hammer per side of molded specimen. (NA for Superpave)



- f. Number of gyrations of Superpave gyratory compactor, (NA for Marshall mix design)
- g. Laboratory mixing temperature.
- h. Lab compaction temperature.
- i. Temperature-viscosity relationship of the asphalt cement.
- j. Plot of the combined gradation on the 0.45 power gradation chart, stating the nominal maximum size.
- k. Graphical plots of stability (NA for Superpave), flow (NA for Superpave), air voids, voids in the mineral aggregate, and unit weight versus asphalt content as shown in **AI MS-2**.
- l. Specific gravity and absorption of each aggregate.
- m. Percent natural sand.
- n. Percent particles with 2 or more fractured faces (in coarse aggregate).
- o. Fine aggregate angularity.
- p. Percent flat or elongated particles (in coarse aggregate).
- q. Tensile Strength Ratio(TSR).
- r. Antistrip agent (if required) and amount.
- s. List of all modifiers and amount.
- t. Correlation of hand-held hammer with mechanical hammer (NA for Superpave).
- u. Percentage and properties (asphalt content, binder properties, and aggregate properties) of reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP) in accordance with paragraph RECYCLED HOT-MIX ASPHALT, if RAP is used.

Table 5. Mix Design Criteria		
Test Property	50 Blows or Mix Gyrations	75 Blows or Mix Gyrations
Stability, <b>pounds</b> , minimum (NA for Superpave)	<b>*1000</b>	<b>*1800</b>
Flow, <b>0.01 inch</b> , (NA for Superpave)	8-18	8-16
Air voids, percent	3-5	3-5
Percent Voids in mineral aggregate (VMA), (minimum)		
Gradation 1	13.0	13.0

Table 5. Mix Design Criteria		
Test Property	50 Blows or Mix Gyrations	75 Blows or Mix Gyrations
Gradation 2	14.0	14.3
Gradation 3	15.0	15.0
TSR, minimum percent	75	75
* This is a minimum requirement. The average during construction shall be significantly higher than this number to ensure compliance with the specifications.		
** Calculate VMA in accordance with AI MS-2, based on ASTM C127 and ASTM C128 bulk specific gravity for the aggregate.		

#### 2.4.2 Adjustments to Field JMF

Keep the Laboratory JMF for each mixture in effect until a new formula is approved in writing by the Contracting Officer. Should a change in sources of any materials be made, perform a new Laboratory JMF design and have the new JMF approved before the new material is used. the Contractor will be allowed to adjust the Laboratory JMF within the limits specified in NCDOT SSRS, Section 610, Asphalt Concrete Plant Mix Pavements and NCDOT Asphalt QMS Manual to optimize mix volumetric properties with approval of the Contracting Officer. Adjustments to the Laboratory JMF shall be applied to the field (plant) established JMF and limits as specified. If adjustments are needed that exceed the limits of Section 610 or the Asphalt QMS Manual, develop a new mixture.

#### 2.5 RECYCLED HOT MIX ASPHALT

Recycled HMA shall consist of reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP), coarse aggregate, fine aggregate, mineral filler, and asphalt cement to produce a consistent gradation and asphalt content and properties. The job mix shall meet the requirements of paragraph MIX DESIGN. The amount of RAP shall not exceed 30 percent.

##### 2.5.1 RAP Aggregates and Asphalt Cement

The blend of aggregates used in the recycled mix shall meet the requirements of paragraph AGGREGATES. Establish the percentage of asphalt in the RAP for the mixture design according to ASTM D2172/D2172M or ASTM D6307 using the appropriate dust correction procedure.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION OF ASPHALT BINDER MATERIAL

Heat the asphalt cement material avoiding local overheating and providing a continuous supply of the asphalt material to the mixer at a uniform temperature. Mixing temperature shall conform to NCDOT SSRS, Section 610, Asphalt Concrete Plant Mix Pavements.

### 3.2 PREPARATION OF MINERAL AGGREGATE

Heat and dry the aggregate for the mixture prior to mixing. No damage shall occur to the aggregates due to the maximum temperature and rate of heating used. The temperature of the aggregate and mineral filler shall conform to NCDOT SSRS, Section 610, Asphalt Concrete Plant Mix Pavements when the asphalt cement is added. The temperature shall not be lower than is required to obtain complete coating and uniform distribution on the aggregate particles and to provide a mixture of satisfactory workability.

### 3.3 PREPARATION OF HOT-MIX ASPHALT MIXTURE

Heat and dry the aggregate for the mixture prior to mixing. No damage shall occur to the aggregates due to the maximum temperature and rate of heating used. The temperature of the aggregate and mineral filler shall conform to NCDOT SSRS, Section 610, Asphalt Concrete Plant Mix Pavements when the asphalt cement is added. The temperature shall not be lower than is required to obtain complete coating and uniform distribution on the aggregate particles and to provide a mixture of satisfactory workability.

### 3.4 PREPARATION OF THE UNDERLYING SURFACE

Preparation shall conform to NCDOT SSRS, Section 610, Asphalt Concrete Plant Mix Pavements and NCDOT Asphalt QMS Manual.

### 3.5 TEST SECTION

Prior to full production, place a test section for each JMF used. Construct a test section 250 - 500 feet long and two paver passes wide placed for two lanes, with a longitudinal cold joint. The test section shall be of the same thickness as the course which it represents. The underlying grade or pavement structure upon which the test section is to be constructed shall be the same as the remainder of the course represented by the test section. The equipment and personnel used in construction of the test section shall be the same equipment to be used on the remainder of the course represented by the test section. Place the test section as part of the project pavement, as approved by the Contracting Officer.

#### 3.5.1 Sampling and Testing for Test Section

Take one random sample at the plant, triplicate specimens compacted, and tested in accordance with NCDOT Asphalt QMS Manual. The test results shall be within the tolerances for work to continue. If all test results meet the specified requirements, the test section shall remain as part of the project pavement. If test results exceed the tolerances shown, the test section shall be removed and replaced at no cost to the Government and another test section shall be constructed. The test section shall be paid for with the first lot of paving.

#### 3.5.2 Additional Test Sections

If the initial test section should prove to be unacceptable, make the necessary adjustments to the JMF, plant operation, placing procedures, and/or rolling procedures and place a second test section. Additional test sections, as required, shall be constructed and evaluated for conformance to the specifications. Full production shall not begin until an acceptable section has been constructed and accepted.

### 3.6 TESTING LABORATORY

Submit certification of compliance and Plant Scale Calibration Certification. Use a laboratory to develop the JMF that meets the requirements of [ASTM D3666](#). The Government will inspect the laboratory equipment and test procedures prior to the start of hot mix operations for conformance to [ASTM D3666](#). The laboratory shall maintain the Corps certification for the duration of the project. A statement signed by the manager of the laboratory stating that it meets these requirements or clearly listing all deficiencies shall be submitted to the Contracting Officer prior to the start of construction. The statement shall contain as a minimum:

- a. Qualifications of personnel; laboratory manager, supervising technician, and testing technicians.
- b. A listing of equipment to be used in developing the job mix.
- c. A copy of the laboratory's quality control system.
- d. Evidence of participation in the AASHTO Materials Reference Laboratory (AMRL) program.

### 3.7 TRANSPORTING AND PLACING

#### 3.7.1 Transporting

Transport the hot-mix asphalt from the mixing plant to the site in clean, tight vehicles. Schedule deliveries so that placing and compacting of mixture is uniform with minimum stopping and starting of the paver. Provide adequate artificial lighting for night placements. Hauling over freshly placed material will not be permitted until the material has been compacted as specified, and allowed to cool to [140 degrees F](#). To deliver mix to the paver, use a material transfer vehicle operated to produce continuous forward motion of the paver.

#### 3.7.2 Placing

Place and compact the mix at a temperature suitable for obtaining density, surface smoothness, and other specified requirements. Upon arrival, place the mixture to the full width by an asphalt paver; it shall be struck off in a uniform layer of such depth that, when the work is completed, it will have the required thickness and conform to the grade and contour indicated. Regulate the speed of the paver to eliminate pulling and tearing of the asphalt mat. Unless otherwise permitted, placement of the mixture shall begin along the centerline of a crowned section or on the high side of areas with a one-way slope. Place the mixture in consecutive adjacent strips having a minimum width of [10 feet](#). The longitudinal joint in one course shall offset the longitudinal joint in the course immediately below by at least [1 foot](#); however, the joint in the surface course shall be at the centerline of the pavement. Transverse joints in one course shall be offset by at least [10 feet](#) from transverse joints in the previous course. Transverse joints in adjacent lanes shall be offset a minimum of [10 feet](#). On isolated areas where irregularities or unavoidable obstacles make the use of mechanical spreading and finishing equipment impractical, the mixture may be spread and luted by hand tools.

### 3.8 COMPACTION OF MIXTURE

After placing, the mixture shall be thoroughly and uniformly compacted by rolling. Compact the surface as soon as possible without causing displacement, cracking or shoving. The sequence of rolling operations and the type of rollers used shall be at the discretion of the Contractor. The speed of the roller shall, at all times, be sufficiently slow to avoid displacement of the hot mixture and be effective in compaction. Any displacement occurring as a result of reversing the direction of the roller, or from any other cause, shall be corrected at once. Furnish sufficient rollers to handle the output of the plant. Continue rolling until the surface is of uniform texture, true to grade and cross section, and the required field density is obtained. To prevent adhesion of the mixture to the roller, keep the wheels properly moistened but excessive water will not be permitted. In areas not accessible to the roller, the mixture shall be thoroughly compacted with hand tampers. Any mixture that becomes loose and broken, mixed with dirt, contains check-cracking, or is in any way defective shall be removed full depth, replaced with fresh hot mixture and immediately compacted to conform to the surrounding area. This work shall be done at the Contractor's expense. Skin patching will not be allowed.

### 3.9 JOINTS

The formation of joints shall be performed ensuring a continuous bond between the courses and to obtain the required density. All joints shall have the same texture as other sections of the course and meet the requirements for smoothness and grade.

#### 3.9.1 Transverse Joints

Do not pass the roller over the unprotected end of the freshly laid mixture, except when necessary to form a transverse joint. When necessary to form a transverse joint, it shall be made by means of placing a bulkhead or by tapering the course. The tapered edge shall be cut back to its full depth and width on a straight line to expose a vertical face prior to placing material at the joint. Remove the cutback material from the project. In both methods, all contact surfaces shall be given a light tack coat of asphalt material before placing any fresh mixture against the joint.

#### 3.9.2 Longitudinal Joints

Longitudinal joints which are irregular, damaged, uncompacted, cold (less than 175 degrees F at the time of placing adjacent lanes), or otherwise defective, shall be cut back a maximum of 3 inches from the top of the course with a cutting wheel to expose a clean, sound vertical surface for the full depth of the course. All cutback material shall be removed from the project. All contact surfaces shall be given a light tack coat of asphalt material prior to placing any fresh mixture against the joint. The Contractor will be allowed to use an alternate method if it can be demonstrated that density, smoothness, and texture can be met.

### 3.10 QUALITY CONTROL

#### 3.10.1 General Quality Control Requirements

Develop and submit an approved Quality Control Plan. Submit aggregate and QC test results. Do not produce hot-mix asphalt for payment until the quality control plan has been approved addressing all elements which affect

the quality of the pavement including, but not limited to:

- a. Mix Design
- b. Aggregate Grading
- c. Quality of Materials
- d. Stockpile Management
- e. Proportioning
- f. Mixing and Transportation
- g. Mixture Volumetrics
- h. Moisture Content of Mixtures
- i. Placing and Finishing
- j. Joints
- k. Compaction
- l. Surface Smoothness

### 3.10.2 Testing Laboratory

Provide a fully equipped asphalt laboratory located at the plant or job site and meeting the pertinent requirements in [ASTM D3666](#). Laboratory facilities shall be kept clean and all equipment maintained in proper working condition. The Contracting Officer shall be permitted unrestricted access to inspect the Contractor's laboratory facility, to witness quality control activities, and to perform any check testing desired. The Contracting Officer will advise the Contractor in writing of any noted deficiencies concerning the laboratory facility, equipment, supplies, or testing personnel and procedures. When the deficiencies are serious enough to adversely affect test results, the incorporation of the materials into the work shall be suspended immediately and will not be permitted to resume until the deficiencies are corrected.

### 3.10.3 Quality Control Testing

Perform all quality control tests applicable to these specifications and as set forth in the Quality Control Program. The testing program shall include, but shall not be limited to, tests for the control of asphalt content, aggregate gradation, temperatures, aggregate moisture, moisture in the asphalt mixture, laboratory air voids, stability (NA for Superpave), flow (NA for Superpave), in-place density, grade and smoothness. Develop a Quality Control Testing Plan as part of the Quality Control Program.

#### 3.10.3.1 Asphalt Content

A minimum of two tests to determine asphalt content will be performed per lot (a lot is defined in paragraph MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE and PERCENT PAYMENT) by one of the following methods: the extraction method in accordance with [ASTM D2172/D2172M](#), Method A or B, the ignition method in accordance with [ASTM D6307](#), or the nuclear method in accordance with [ASTM D4125/D4125M](#). Calibrate the ignition oven or the nuclear gauge for the specific mix being

used. For the extraction method, determine the weight of ash, as described in [ASTM D2172/D2172M](#), as part of the first extraction test performed at the beginning of plant production; and as part of every tenth extraction test performed thereafter, for the duration of plant production. The last weight of ash value obtained shall be used in the calculation of the asphalt content for the mixture.

#### 3.10.3.2 Gradation

Determine aggregate gradations a minimum of twice per lot from mechanical analysis of recovered aggregate in accordance with [ASTM D5444](#). When asphalt content is determined by the ignition oven or nuclear method, aggregate gradation shall be determined from hot bin samples on batch plants, or from the cold feed on drum mix plants. For batch plants, test aggregates in accordance with [ASTM C136/C136M](#) using actual batch weights to determine the combined aggregate gradation of the mixture.

#### 3.10.3.3 Temperatures

Check temperatures at least four times per lot, at necessary locations, to determine the temperature at the dryer, the asphalt cement in the storage tank, the asphalt mixture at the plant, and the asphalt mixture at the job site.

#### 3.10.3.4 Aggregate Moisture

Determine the moisture content of aggregate used for production a minimum of once per lot in accordance with [ASTM C566](#).

#### 3.10.3.5 Moisture Content of Mixture

Determine the moisture content of the mixture at least once per lot in accordance with [ASTM D1461](#) or an approved alternate procedure.

#### 3.10.3.6 Laboratory Air Voids, Marshall Stability and Flow

Take mixture samples at least four times per lot compacted into specimens, using 50 blows per side with the hand-held Marshall hammer as described in [ASTM D6926](#). When the Superpave gyratory compactor is used, mixes will be compacted to 50 gyrations in accordance with [ASTM D6925](#). Hot-mix provided under the DOT Superpave option shall be compacted in accordance with the DOT requirements. After compaction, determine the laboratory air voids of each specimen. Stability and flow shall be determined for the Marshall-compacted specimens, in accordance with [ASTM D6927](#).

#### 3.10.3.7 In-Place Density

Conduct any necessary testing to ensure the specified density is achieved. A nuclear gauge may be used to monitor pavement density in accordance with [ASTM D2950/D2950M](#).

#### 3.10.3.8 Grade and Smoothness

Conduct the necessary checks to ensure the grade and smoothness requirements are met in accordance with paragraphs MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE and PERCENT PAYMENT.

### 3.10.3.9 Additional Testing

Any additional testing, which the Contractor deems necessary to control the process, may be performed at the Contractor's option.

### 3.10.3.10 QC Monitoring

Submit all QC test results to the Contracting Officer on a daily basis as the tests are performed. The Contracting Officer reserves the right to monitor any of the Contractor's quality control testing and to perform duplicate testing as a check to the Contractor's quality control testing.

### 3.10.4 Sampling

When directed by the Contracting Officer, sample and test any material which appears inconsistent with similar material being produced, unless such material is voluntarily removed and replaced or deficiencies corrected by the Contractor. All sampling shall be in accordance with standard procedures specified.

### 3.10.5 Control Charts

For process control, establish and maintain linear control charts on both individual samples and the running average of last four samples for the parameters listed in Table 8, as a minimum. These control charts shall be posted as directed by the Contracting Officer and kept current at all times. The control charts shall identify the project number, the test parameter being plotted, the individual sample numbers, the Action and Suspension Limits listed in Table 8 applicable to the test parameter being plotted, and the Contractor's test results. Target values from the JMF shall also be shown on the control charts as indicators of central tendency for the cumulative percent passing, asphalt content, and laboratory air voids parameters. When the test results exceed either applicable Action Limit, take immediate steps to bring the process back in control. When the test results exceed either applicable Suspension Limit, halt production until the problem is solved. Use the control charts as part of the process control system for identifying trends so that potential problems can be corrected before they occur. Make decisions concerning mix modifications based on analysis of the results provided in the control charts. The Quality Control Plan shall indicate the appropriate action to be taken to bring the process into control when certain parameters exceed their Action Limits.

Table 8. Action and Suspension Limits for the Parameters to be Plotted on Individual and Running Average Control Charts				
	Individual Samples		Running Average of Last Four Samples	
Parameter to be Plotted	Action Limit	Suspension Limit	Action Limit	Suspension Limit
No. 4 sieve, Cumulative percent passing, deviation for JMF target; plus or minus values	6	8	4	5
No. 30 sieve, Cumulative percent passing, deviation for JMF target; plus or minus values	4	6	3	4



Table 8. Action and Suspension Limits for the Parameters to be Plotted on Individual and Running Average Control Charts				
	Individual Samples		Running Average of Last Four Samples	
Parameter to be Plotted	Action Limit	Suspension Limit	Action Limit	Suspension Limit
No. 200 sieve, Cumulative percent passing, deviation for JMF target; plus or minus values	1.4	2.0	1.1	1.5
Stability, pounds (minimum) (NA for Superpave)				
75 Blow JMF	1800	1700	1900	1800
50 Blow JMF	1000	900	1100	1000
Flow, 0.01 inch (NA for Superpave)				
75 Blow JMF	8 min.	7 min.	9 min.	8 min.
	16 max.	17 max.	15 max.	16 max.
50 Blow JMF	8 min.	7 min.	9 min.	8 min.
	18 max.	19 max.	17 max.	18 max.
Asphalt content, percent deviation from JMF target; plus or minus value	0.4	0.5	0.2	0.3
Laboratory Air Voids, percent deviation from JMF target value	No specific action and suspension limits set since this parameter is used to determine percent payment			
In-place Mat Density, percent of TMD	No specific action and suspension limits set since this parameter is used to determine percent payment			
In-place Joint Density, percent of TMD	No specific action and suspension limits set since this parameter is used to determine percent payment			

### 3.11 MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE

Testing for acceptability of work will be performed by an independent laboratory hired by the Contractor. Forward test results and payment calculations daily to the Contracting Officer. Acceptance of the plant produced mix and in-place requirements will be on a lot to lot basis. A standard lot for all requirements will be equal to 8 hours of production. Where appropriate, adjustment in payment for individual lots of hot-mix asphalt will be made based on in-place density, laboratory air voids, grade and smoothness in accordance with the following paragraphs. Grade and surface smoothness determinations will be made on the lot as a whole. Exceptions or adjustments to this will be made in situations where the mix within one lot is placed as part of both the intermediate and surface courses, thus grade and smoothness measurements for the entire lot cannot be made. In order to evaluate laboratory air voids and in-place (field) density, each lot will be divided into four equal sublots.

### 3.11.1 Sublot Sampling

One random mixture sample for determining laboratory air voids, theoretical maximum density, and for any additional testing the Contracting Officer desires, will be taken from a loaded truck delivering mixture to each sublot, or other appropriate location for each sublot. All samples will be selected randomly, using commonly recognized methods of assuring randomness conforming to [ASTM D3665](#) and employing tables of random numbers or computer programs. Laboratory air voids will be determined from three laboratory compacted specimens of each sublot sample in accordance with [ASTM D6926](#). The specimens will be compacted within 2 hours of the time the mixture was loaded into trucks at the asphalt plant. Samples will not be reheated prior to compaction and insulated containers will be used as necessary to maintain the temperature.

### 3.11.2 Additional Sampling and Testing

The Contracting Officer reserves the right to direct additional samples and tests for any area which appears to deviate from the specification requirements. The cost of any additional testing will be paid for by the Government. Testing in these areas will be in addition to the lot testing, and the requirements for these areas will be the same as those for a lot.

### 3.11.3 Grade

The final wearing surface of pavement shall conform to the elevations and cross sections shown and shall vary not more than [0.05 foot](#) from the plan grade established and approved at site of work. Finished surfaces at juncture with other pavements shall coincide with finished surfaces of abutting pavements. Deviation from the plan elevation will not be permitted in areas of pavements where closer conformance with planned elevation is required for the proper functioning of drainage and other appurtenant structures involved. The grade will be determined by running lines of levels at intervals of [25 feet](#), or less, longitudinally and transversely, to determine the elevation of the completed pavement surface. Within 5 working days, after the completion of a particular lot incorporating the final wearing surface, test the final wearing surface of the pavement for conformance with the specified plan grade. Diamond grinding may be used to remove high spots to meet grade requirements. Skin patching for correcting low areas or planing or milling for correcting high areas will not be permitted.

### 3.11.4 Surface Smoothness

Use one of the following methods to test and evaluate surface smoothness of the pavement. Perform all testing in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Keep detailed notes of the results of the testing and furnish a copy to the Government immediately after each day's testing. Where drawings show required deviations from a plane surface (crowns, drainage inlets, etc.), the surface shall be finished to meet the approval of the Contracting Officer.

#### 3.11.4.1 Smoothness Requirements

##### 3.11.4.1.1 Straightedge Testing

The finished surfaces of the pavements shall have no abrupt change of [1/4 inch](#) or more, and all pavements shall be within the tolerances of [1/4 inch](#)

in both the longitudinal and transverse directions, when tested with an approved 12 feet straightedge.

#### 3.11.4.2 Testing Method

After the final rolling, but not later than 24 hours after placement, test the surface of the pavement in each entire lot in such a manner as to reveal all surface irregularities exceeding the tolerances specified above. Separate testing of individual sublots is not required. If any pavement areas are ground, these areas shall be retested immediately after grinding. Test each lot of the pavement in both a longitudinal and a transverse direction on parallel lines. Set the transverse lines 15 feet or less apart, as directed. The longitudinal lines shall be at the centerline of each paving lane for lanes less than 20 feet wide and at the third points for lanes 20 feet or wider. Also test other areas having obvious deviations. Longitudinal testing lines shall be continuous across all joints.

##### 3.11.4.2.1 Straightedge Testing

Hold the straightedge in contact with the surface and move it ahead one-half the length of the straightedge for each successive measurement. Determine the amount of surface irregularity by placing the freestanding (unleveled) straightedge on the pavement surface and allowing it to rest upon the two highest spots covered by its length, and measuring the maximum gap between the straightedge and the pavement surface in the area between these two high points.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 32 16 19

CONCRETE CURBS, GUTTERS  
05/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 UNIT PRICES

1.1.1 Measurement

1.1.1.1 Curbs and Gutters

The quantities of curbs and gutters to be paid for will be the number of linear feet of each cross section constructed as indicated, measured along the face of the curb at the gutter line.

1.1.2 Payment

1.1.2.1 Curbs and Gutters

Payment of the quantities of curbs and gutters measured as specified will be at the Contract unit price per linear foot of each cross section.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)

AASHTO M 182 (2005; R 2017) Standard Specification for  
Burlap Cloth Made from Jute or Kenaf and  
Cotton Mats

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A615/A615M (2020) Standard Specification for Deformed  
and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete  
Reinforcement

ASTM A1064/A1064M (2017) Standard Specification for  
Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire  
Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for  
Concrete

ASTM C31/C31M (2019a) Standard Practice for Making and  
Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field

ASTM C94/C94M (2020) Standard Specification for  
Ready-Mixed Concrete

ASTM C143/C143M (2015) Standard Test Method for Slump of  
Hydraulic-Cement Concrete

ASTM C171	(2016) Standard Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete
ASTM C172/C172M	(2017) Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete
ASTM C173/C173M	(2016) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method
ASTM C231/C231M	(2017a) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
ASTM C309	(2011) Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM D1751	(2004; E 2013; R 2013) Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
ASTM D1752	(2018) Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber, Cork and Recycled PVC Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction
ASTM D5893/D5893M	(2016) Standard Specification for Cold Applied, Single Component, Chemically Curing Silicone Joint Sealant for Portland Cement Concrete Pavements

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC A117.1 COMM	(2017) Standard And Commentary Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities
-----------------	---

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Concrete

SD-06 Test Reports

Field Quality Control

#### 1.4 EQUIPMENT, TOOLS, AND MACHINES

##### 1.4.1 General Requirements

Plant, equipment, machines, and tools used in the work will be subject to approval and must be maintained in a satisfactory working condition at all times. Use equipment capable of producing the required product, meeting grade controls, thickness control and smoothness requirements as specified. Discontinue using equipment that produces unsatisfactory results. Allow the Contracting Officer access at all times to the plant and equipment to ensure proper operation and compliance with specifications.

##### 1.4.2 Slip Form Equipment

Slip form paver or curb forming machines, will be approved based on trial use on the job and must be self-propelled, automatically controlled, crawler mounted, and capable of spreading, consolidating, and shaping the plastic concrete to the desired cross section in one pass.

#### 1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

##### 1.5.1 Placing During Cold Weather

Do not place concrete when the air temperature reaches 40 degrees F and is falling, or is already below that point. Placement may begin when the air temperature reaches 35 degrees F and is rising, or is already above 40 degrees F. Make provisions to protect the concrete from freezing during the specified curing period. If necessary to place concrete when the temperature of the air, aggregates, or water is below 35 degrees F, placement and protection must be approved in writing. Approval will be contingent upon full conformance with the following provisions. Prepare and protect the underlying material so that it is entirely free of frost when the concrete is deposited. Heat mixing water and aggregates as necessary to result in the temperature of the in-place concrete being between 50 and 85 degrees F. Methods and equipment for heating must be approved. Use only aggregates that are free of ice, snow, and frozen lumps before entering the mixer. Provide covering or other means as needed to maintain the concrete at a temperature of at least 50 degrees F for not less than 72 hours after placing, and at a temperature above freezing for the remainder of the curing period.

##### 1.5.2 Placing During Warm Weather

The temperature of the concrete as placed must not exceed 85 degrees F except where an approved retarder is used. Cool the mixing water and aggregates as necessary to maintain a satisfactory placing temperature. The placing temperature must not exceed 95 degrees F at any time.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 CONCRETE

Provide concrete conforming to the applicable requirements of ASTM C94/C94M except as otherwise specified. Concrete must have a minimum compressive strength of 3500 psi at 28 days. Size of aggregate must not exceed 1-1/2 inches. Submit copies of certified delivery tickets for all concrete used in the construction.

#### 2.1.1 Air Content

Use concrete mixtures that have an air content by volume of concrete of 5 to 7 percent, based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer.

#### 2.1.2 Slump

Use concrete with a slump of 3 inches plus or minus 1 inch for hand placed concrete or 1 inch plus or minus 1/2 inch for slipformed concrete as determined in accordance with ASTM C143/C143M.

#### 2.1.3 Reinforcement Steel

Use reinforcement bars conforming to ASTM A615/A615M. Use wire mesh reinforcement conforming to ASTM A1064/A1064M.

### 2.2 CONCRETE CURING MATERIALS

#### 2.2.1 Impervious Sheet Materials

Use impervious sheet materials conforming to ASTM C171, type optional, except that polyethylene film, if used, must be white opaque.

#### 2.2.2 Burlap

Use burlap conforming to AASHTO M 182.

#### 2.2.3 White Pigmented Membrane-Forming Curing Compound

Use white pigmented membrane-forming curing compound conforming to ASTM C309, Type 2.

### 2.3 CONCRETE PROTECTION MATERIALS

Use concrete protection materials consisting of a linseed oil mixture of equal parts, by volume, of linseed oil and either mineral spirits, naphtha, or turpentine. At the option of the Contractor, commercially prepared linseed oil mixtures, formulated specifically for application to concrete to provide protection against the action of deicing chemicals may be used, except that emulsified mixtures are not acceptable.

### 2.4 JOINT FILLER STRIPS

#### 2.4.1 Contraction Joint Filler for Curb and Gutter

Use hard-pressed fiberboard contraction joint filler for curb and gutter.

#### 2.4.2 Expansion Joint Filler, Premolded

Unless otherwise indicated, use 1/2 inch thick premolded expansion joint filler conforming to ASTM D1751 or ASTM D1752.

### 2.5 JOINT SEALANTS

Use cold-applied joint sealant conforming to ASTM C920 or ASTM D5893/D5893M.



## 2.6 FORM WORK

Design and construct form work to ensure that the finished concrete will conform accurately to the indicated dimensions, lines, and elevations, and within the tolerances specified. Use wood or steel forms that are straight and of sufficient strength to resist springing during depositing and consolidating concrete.

### 2.6.1 Wood Forms

Use forms that are surfaced plank, 2 inches nominal thickness, straight and free from warp, twist, loose knots, splits or other defects. Use forms with a nominal length of 10 feet. Radius bends may be formed with 3/4 inch boards, laminated to the required thickness.

### 2.6.2 Steel Forms

Use channel-formed sections with a flat top surface and welded braces at each end and at not less than two intermediate points. Use forms with interlocking and self-aligning ends. Provide flexible forms for radius forming, corner forms, form spreaders, and fillers as needed. Use forms with a nominal length of 10 feet and that have a minimum of 3 welded stake pockets per form. Use stake pins consisting of solid steel rods with chamfered heads and pointed tips designed for use with steel forms.

### 2.6.3 Curb and Gutter Forms

Use curb and gutter outside forms that have a height equal to the full depth of the curb or gutter. Use rigid forms for curb returns, except that benders or thin plank forms may be used for curb or curb returns with a radius of 10 feet or more, where grade changes occur in the return, or where the central angle is such that a rigid form with a central angle of 90 degrees cannot be used. Back forms for curb returns may be made of 1-1/2 inch benders, for the full height of the curb, cleated together. In lieu of inside forms for curbs, a curb "mule" may be used for forming and finishing this surface, provided the results are approved.

## 2.7 Detectable Warning System

Detectable Warning Systems shown on the Contract plans are to meet requirements of ICC A117.1 COMM - Section 705.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 SUBGRADE PREPARATION

Construct subgrade to the specified grade and cross section prior to concrete placement.

#### 3.1.1 Curb and Gutter Subgrade

Place and compact the subgrade in accordance with Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK Section 32 11 23 AGGREGATE BASE COURSES. Test the subgrade for grade and cross section by means of a template extending the full width of the curb and gutter. Use subgrade materials equal in bearing quality to the subgrade under the adjacent pavement.

### 3.1.2 Maintenance of Subgrade

Maintain subgrade in a smooth, compacted condition in conformity with the required section and established grade until the concrete is placed. The subgrade must be in a moist condition when concrete is placed. Prepare and protect subgrade so that it is free from frost when the concrete is deposited.

### 3.2 FORM SETTING

Set forms to the indicated alignment, grade and dimensions. Hold forms rigidly in place by a minimum of 3 stakes per form placed at intervals not to exceed 4 feet. Use additional stakes and braces at corners, deep sections, and radius bends, as required. Use clamps, spreaders, and braces where required to ensure rigidity in the forms. Remove forms in a manner that will not injure the concrete. Do not use bars or heavy tools against the concrete when removing the forms. Promptly and satisfactorily repair concrete found to be defective after form removal. Clean forms and coat with form oil or biodegradable form release agent each time before concrete is placed. Wood forms may, instead, be thoroughly wetted with water before concrete is placed, except that with probable freezing temperatures, oiling is mandatory.

#### 3.2.1 Curbs and Gutters

Remove forms used along the front of the curb not less than 2 hours nor more than 6 hours after the concrete has been placed. Do not remove forms used along the back of curb until the face and top of the curb have been finished, as specified for concrete finishing. Do not remove gutter forms while the concrete is sufficiently plastic to slump in any direction.

### 3.3 CURB AND GUTTER CONCRETE PLACEMENT AND FINISHING

#### 3.3.1 Formed Curb and Gutter

Place concrete to the required section in a single lift. Consolidate concrete using approved mechanical vibrators. Curve shaped gutters must be finished with a standard curb "mule".

#### 3.3.2 Curb and Gutter Finishing

Approved slipformed curb and gutter machines may be used in lieu of hand placement.

#### 3.3.3 Concrete Finishing

Float and finish exposed surfaces with a smooth wood float until true to grade and section and uniform in texture. Brush floated surfaces with a fine-hair brush using longitudinal strokes. Round the edges of the gutter and top of the curb with an edging tool to a radius of 1/2 inch. Immediately after removing the front curb form, rub the face of the curb with a wood or concrete rubbing block and water until blemishes, form marks, and tool marks have been removed. Brush the front curb surface, while still wet, in the same manner as the gutter and curb top. Finish the top surface of gutter and entrance to grade with a wood float.

#### 3.3.4 Joint Finishing

Finish curb edges at formed joints as indicated.

### 3.3.5 Surface and Thickness Tolerances

Finished surfaces must not vary more than  $1/4$  inch from the testing edge of a 10-foot straightedge. Permissible deficiency in section thickness will be up to  $1/4$  inch.

### 3.4 CURB AND GUTTER JOINTS

Construct curb and gutter joints at right angles to the line of curb and gutter.

#### 3.4.1 Contraction Joints

Construct contraction joints directly opposite contraction joints in abutting portland cement concrete pavements and spaced so that monolithic sections between curb returns will not be less than 5 feet nor greater than 15 feet in length.

- a. Construct contraction joints (except for slip forming) by means of  $1/8$  inch thick separators and of a section conforming to the cross section of the curb and gutter. Remove separators as soon as practicable after concrete has set sufficiently to preserve the width and shape of the joint and prior to finishing.
- b. When slip forming is used, cut the contraction joints in the top portion of the gutter/curb hardened concrete in a continuous cut across the curb and gutter, using a power-driven saw. Cut the contraction joint to a depth of at least one-fourth of the gutter/curb depth using a  $1/8$  inch saw blade.

#### 3.4.2 Expansion Joints

Form expansion joints by means of preformed expansion joint filler material cut and shaped to the cross section of curb and gutter. Construct expansion joints in curb and gutter directly opposite expansion joints of abutting portland cement concrete pavement using the same type and thickness of joints as joints in the pavement. Where curb and gutter do not abut portland cement concrete pavement, provide expansion joints at least  $1/2$  inch in width at intervals not less than 30 feet nor greater than 120 feet. Seal expansion joints immediately following curing of the concrete or as soon thereafter as weather conditions permit. Seal expansion joints and the top 1 inch depth of curb and gutter contraction-joints with joint sealant. Thoroughly clean the joint opening before the sealing material is placed. Do not spill sealing material on exposed surfaces of the concrete. Concrete at the joint must be surface dry and atmospheric and concrete temperatures must be above 50 degrees F at the time of application of joint sealing material. Immediately remove excess material on exposed surfaces of the concrete and clean concrete surfaces.

### 3.5 CURING AND PROTECTION

#### 3.5.1 General Requirements

Protect concrete against loss of moisture and rapid temperature changes for at least 7 days from the beginning of the curing operation. Protect unhardened concrete from rain and flowing water. All equipment needed for adequate curing and protection of the concrete must be on hand and ready

for use before actual concrete placement begins. Protect concrete as necessary to prevent cracking of the pavement due to temperature changes during the curing period.

#### 3.5.1.1 Mat Method

Cover the entire exposed surface with two or more layers of burlap. Overlap mats at least 6 inches. Thoroughly wet the mat with water prior to placing on concrete surface and keep the mat continuously in a saturated condition and in intimate contact with concrete for not less than 7 days.

#### 3.5.1.2 Impervious Sheeting Method

Wet the entire exposed surface with a fine spray of water and then cover with impervious sheeting material. Lay sheets directly on the concrete surface with the light-colored side up and overlapped 12 inches when a continuous sheet is not used. Use sheeting that is not less than 18-inches wider than the concrete surface to be cured. Secure sheeting using heavy wood planks or a bank of moist earth placed along edges and laps in the sheets. Satisfactorily repair or replace sheets that are torn or otherwise damaged during curing. Sheeting must remain on the concrete surface to be cured for not less than 7 days.

#### 3.5.1.3 Membrane Curing Method

Apply a uniform coating of white-pigmented membrane-curing compound to the entire exposed surface of the concrete as soon after finishing as the free water has disappeared from the finished surface. Coat formed surfaces immediately after the forms are removed and in no case longer than 1 hour after the removal of forms. Do not allow concrete surface to dry before application of the membrane. If drying has occurred, moisten the surface of the concrete with a fine spray of water and apply the curing compound as soon as the free water disappears. Apply curing compound in two coats by hand-operated pressure sprayers at a coverage of approximately 200 square feet/gallon for the total of both coats. Apply the second coat in a direction approximately at right angles to the direction of application of the first coat. The compound must form a uniform, continuous, coherent film that will not check, crack, or peel and must be free from pinholes or other imperfections. If pinholes, abrasion, or other discontinuities exist, apply an additional coat to the affected areas within 30 minutes. Respray concrete surfaces that are subjected to heavy rainfall within 3 hours after the curing compound has been applied by the method and at the coverage specified above. Respray areas where the curing compound is damaged by subsequent construction operations within the curing period. Take precautions necessary to ensure that the concrete is properly cured at sawed joints, and that no curing compound enters the joints. Tightly seal the top of the joint opening and the joint groove at exposed edges before the concrete in the region of the joint is resprayed with curing compound. Use a method used for sealing the joint groove that prevents loss of moisture from the joint during the entire specified curing period. Provide approved standby facilities for curing concrete pavement at a location accessible to the jobsite for use in the event of mechanical failure of the spraying equipment or other conditions that might prevent correct application of the membrane-curing compound at the proper time. Adequately protect concrete surfaces to which membrane-curing compounds have been applied during the entire curing period from pedestrian and vehicular traffic, except as required for joint-sawing operations and surface tests, and from other possible damage to the continuity of the membrane.

### 3.5.2 Backfilling

After curing, remove debris and backfill, grade, and compact the area adjoining the concrete to conform to the surrounding area in accordance with lines and grades indicated.

### 3.5.3 Protection

Protect completed concrete from damage until accepted. Repair damaged concrete and clean concrete discolored during construction. Remove and reconstruct concrete that is damaged for the entire length between regularly scheduled joints. Refinishing the damaged portion will not be acceptable. Dispose of removed material as directed.

### 3.5.4 Protective Coating

Apply a protective coating of linseed oil mixture to the exposed-to-view concrete surface after the curing period, if concrete will be exposed to de-icing chemicals within 6 weeks after placement. Moist cure concrete to receive a protective coating.

#### 3.5.4.1 Application

Complete curing and backfilling operation prior to applying two coats of protective coating. Concrete must be surface dry and clean before each application. Spray apply at a rate of not more than 50 square yards/gallon for first application and not more than 70 square yards/gallon for second application, except that the number of applications and coverage for each application for commercially prepared mixture must be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Protect coated surfaces from vehicular and pedestrian traffic until dry.

#### 3.5.4.2 Precautions

Do not heat protective coating by direct application of flame or electrical heaters and protect the coating from exposure to open flame, sparks, and fire adjacent to open containers or applicators. Do not apply material at ambient or material temperatures lower than 50 degrees F.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Submit copies of all test reports within 24 hours of completion of the test.

#### 3.6.1 General Requirements

Perform the inspection and tests described and meet the specified requirements for inspection details and frequency of testing. Based upon the results of these inspections and tests, take the action and submit reports as required below, and additional tests to ensure that the requirements of these specifications are met.

#### 3.6.2 Concrete Testing

##### 3.6.2.1 Strength Testing

Take concrete samples in accordance with ASTM C172/C172M not less than once a day nor less than once for every 250 cubic yards of concrete placed. Mold cylinders in accordance with ASTM C31/C31M for strength testing by an approved laboratory. Each strength test result must be the average of 2

test cylinders from the same concrete sample tested at 28 days, unless otherwise specified or approved. Concrete specified on the basis of compressive strength will be considered satisfactory if the averages of all sets of three consecutive strength test results equal or exceed the specified strength, and no individual strength test result falls below the specified strength by more than 500 psi.

#### 3.6.2.2 Air Content

Determine air content in accordance with ASTM C173/C173M or ASTM C231/C231M. Use ASTM C231/C231M with concretes and mortars made with relatively dense natural aggregates. Make two tests for air content on randomly selected batches of each class of concrete placed during each shift. Make additional tests when excessive variation in concrete workability is reported by the placing foreman or the Government inspector. Notify the placing foreman if results are out of tolerance. The placing foreman must take appropriate action to have the air content corrected at the plant. Additional tests for air content will be performed on each truckload of material until such time as the air content is within the tolerance specified.

#### 3.6.2.3 Slump Test

Perform two slump tests on randomly selected batches of each class of concrete for every 250 cubic yards, or fraction thereof, of concrete placed during each shift. Perform additional tests when excessive variation in the workability of the concrete is noted or when excessive crumbling or slumping is noted along the edges of slip-formed concrete.

#### 3.6.3 Thickness Evaluation

Determine the anticipated thickness of the concrete prior to placement by passing a template through the formed section or by measuring the depth of opening of the extrusion template of the curb forming machine. If a slip form paver is used for sidewalk placement, construct the subgrade true to grade prior to concrete placement. The thickness will be determined by measuring each edge of the completed slab.

#### 3.6.4 Surface Evaluation

Provide finished surfaces for each category of the completed work that are uniform in color and free of blemishes and form or tool marks.

### 3.7 SURFACE DEFICIENCIES AND CORRECTIONS

#### 3.7.1 Thickness Deficiency

When measurements indicate that the completed concrete section is deficient in thickness by more than 1/4 inch the deficient section will be removed, between regularly scheduled joints, and replaced.

#### 3.7.2 High Areas

In areas not meeting surface smoothness and plan grade requirements, reduce high areas either by rubbing the freshly finished concrete with carborundum brick and water when the concrete is less than 36 hours old or by grinding the hardened concrete with an approved surface grinding machine after the concrete is 36 hours old or more. The area corrected by grinding the surface of the hardened concrete must not exceed 5 percent of the area of

any integral slab, and the depth of grinding must not exceed 1/4 inch. Remove and replace pavement areas requiring grade or surface smoothness corrections in excess of the limits specified.

### 3.7.3 Appearance

Exposed surfaces of the finished work will be inspected by the Contracting Officer and deficiencies in appearance will be identified. Remove and replace areas which exhibit excessive cracking, discoloration, form marks, or tool marks or which are otherwise inconsistent with the overall appearances of the work.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



SECTION 32 17 23

PAVEMENT MARKINGS  
08/16, CHG 5: 11/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)

AASHTO M 248 (1991; R 2012) Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed White and Yellow Traffic Paints

AASHTO M 249 (2012; R2016) Standard Specification for White and Yellow Reflective Thermoplastic Striping Material (Solid Form)

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D476 (2015) Dry Pigmentary Titanium Dioxide Pigments

ASTM D638 (2014) Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics

ASTM D695 (2010) Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties of Rigid Plastics

ASTM D711 (2010; R 2015) No-Pick-Up Time of Traffic Paint

ASTM D1652 (2011; E 2012) Standard Test Method for Epoxy Content of Epoxy Resins

ASTM D2074 (2007; R2013) Standard Test Methods for Total, Primary, Secondary, and Tertiary Amine Values of Fatty Amines by Alternative Indicator Method

ASTM D2240 (2015; E 2017) Standard Test Method for Rubber Property - Durometer Hardness

ASTM D4060 (2019) Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coatings by the Taber Abraser

ASTM D4505 (2012; R 2017) Standard Specification for Preformed Retroreflective Pavement Marking Tape for Extended Service Life

ASTM D6628 (2003; R 2015) Standard Specification for Color of Pavement Marking Materials

ASTM D7234 (2012) Standard Test Method for Pull-Off Adhesion Strength of Coatings on Concrete Using Portable Pull-Off Adhesion Testers

ASTM E1347 (2006; R 2020) Standard Test Method for Color and Color Difference Measurement by Tristimulus (Filter) Colorimetry

INTERNATIONAL CONCRETE REPAIR INSTITUTE (ICRI)

ICRI 03732 (1997) Selecting and Specifying Concrete Surface Preparation for Sealers, Coatings, and Polymer Overlays

SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)

SAE AMS-STD-595A (2017) Colors used in Government Procurement

U.S. FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION (FAA)

FAA AC 150/5370-10 (2018; Rev H; Errata 1 2019) Standard Specifications for Construction of Airports

U.S. FEDERAL HIGHWAY ADMINISTRATION (FHWA)

MUTCD (2015) Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

FS TT-B-1325 (Rev D; Notice 1; Notice 2 2017) Beads (Glass Spheres) Retro-Reflective (Metric)

FS TT-P-1952 (2015; Rev F; Notice 1) Paint, Traffic and Airfield Markings, Waterborne

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Surface Preparation Equipment List; G

Application Equipment List; G

Exterior Surface Preparation

Safety Data Sheets; G

Waterborne Paint; G

Solventborne Paint; G

Thermoplastic compound; G

SD-07 Certificates

Qualifications; G

Reflective Media for Roads

Waterborne Paint

Solventborne Paint

Volatile Organic Compound, (VOC); G

Thermoplastic Compound

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Waterborne Paint; G

Solventborne Paint; G

Thermoplastic Compound; G

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Regulatory Requirements

Submit certificate stating that the proposed pavement marking paint meets the [Volatile Organic Compound](#), (VOC) regulations of the local Air Pollution Control District having jurisdiction over the geographical area in which the project is located. Submit [Safety Data Sheets](#) for each product.

1.3.2 Qualifications

Submit documentation certifying that pertinent personnel are qualified for equipment operation and handling of applicable chemicals. The documentation should include experience on five projects of similar size and scope with references for all personnel.

1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Deliver paint materials, thermoplastic compound materials, and reflective media in original sealed containers that plainly show the designated name, specification number, batch number, color, date of manufacture, manufacturer's directions, and name of manufacturer.

Provide storage facilities at the job site for maintaining materials at temperatures recommended by the manufacturer.

1.5 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

1.5.1 Environmental Requirements

1.5.1.1 Weather Limitations for Application

Apply pavement markings to clean, dry surfaces, and unless otherwise approved, only when the air and pavement surface temperature is at least 5

degrees F above the dew point and the air and pavement temperatures are within the limits recommended by the pavement marking manufacturer. Allow pavement surfaces to dry after water has been used for cleaning or rainfall has occurred prior to striping or marking. Test the pavement surface for moisture before beginning work each day and after cleaning. Do not commence marking until the pavement is sufficiently dry and the pavement condition has been approved by the Contracting Officer. Employ the "plastic wrap method" to test the pavement for moisture as specified in paragraph TESTING FOR MOISTURE.

#### 1.5.1.2 Weather Limitations for Removal of Pavement Markings on Roads and Automotive Parking Areas

Pavement surface must be free of snow, ice, or slush; with a surface temperature of at least 40 degrees F and rising at the beginning of operations, except those involving shot or sand blasting or grinding. Cease operation during thunderstorms, or during rainfall, except for waterblasting and removal of previously applied chemicals. Cease waterblasting where surface water accumulation alters the effectiveness of material removal.

#### 1.5.2 Traffic Controls

Place warning signs conforming to MUTCD near the beginning of the worksite and well ahead of the worksite for alerting approaching traffic from both directions. Place small markers along newly painted lines or freshly placed raised markers to control traffic and prevent damage to newly painted surfaces or displacement of raised pavement markers. Mark painting equipment with large warning signs indicating slow-moving painting equipment in operation.

When traffic must be rerouted or controlled to accomplish the work, provide necessary warning signs, flag persons, and related equipment for the safe passage of vehicles.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT

##### 2.1.1 Surface Preparation and Paint Removal

##### 2.1.1.1 Surface Preparation Equipment for Roads and Automotive Parking Areas

Submit a surface preparation equipment list by serial number, type, model, and manufacturer. Include descriptive data indicating area of coverage per pass, pressure adjustment range, tank and flow capacities, and safety precautions required for the equipment operation. Mobile equipment must allow for removal of markings without damaging the pavement surface or joint sealant. Maintain machines, tools, and equipment used in the performance of the work in satisfactory operating condition.

##### 2.1.1.1.1 Waterblasting Equipment

Use mobile waterblasting equipment capable of producing a pressurized stream of water that effectively removes paint from the pavement surface without significantly damaging the pavement. Provide equipment, tools, and machinery which are safe and in good working order at all times.

#### 2.1.1.1.2 Grinding or Scarifying Equipment

Use equipment capable of removing surface contaminants, paint build-up, or extraneous markings from the pavement surface without leaving any residue. Clean the surface by hydro blast to remove surface contaminants and ash after a weed torch is used to remove paint.

#### 2.1.1.1.3 Chemical Removal Equipment

Use chemical equipment capable of applying and removing chemicals and paint from the pavement surface, leaving only non-toxic biodegradable residue without scarring or other damage to the pavement or joints and joint seals.

#### 2.1.2 Application Equipment

Submit [application equipment list](#) appropriate for the material(s) to be used. Include manufacturer's descriptive data and certification for the planned use that indicates area of coverage per pass, pressure adjustment range, tank and flow capacities, and all safety precautions required for operating and maintaining the equipment. Provide and maintain machines, tools, and equipment used in the performance of the work in satisfactory operating condition, or remove them from the work site. Provide mobile and maneuverable application equipment to the extent that straight lines can be followed and normal curves can be made in a true arc.

#### 2.1.2.1 Paint Application Equipment

##### 2.1.2.1.1 Hand-Operated, Push-Type Machines

Provide hand-operated push-type applicator machine of a type commonly used for application of water based paint or two-component, chemically curing paint, thermoplastic, or preformed tape, to pavement surfaces for small marking projects, such as legends and cross-walks, automotive parking areas, or surface painted signs. Provide applicator machine equipped with the necessary tanks and spraying nozzles capable of applying paint uniformly at coverage specified. Hand operated spray guns may be used in areas where push-type machines cannot be used.

##### 2.1.2.1.2 Self-Propelled or Mobile-Drawn Spraying Machines

Provide self-propelled or mobile-drawn spraying machine with suitable arrangements of atomizing nozzles and controls to obtain the specified results. Provide machine having a speed during application capable of applying the stripe widths indicated at the paint coverage rate specified herein and of even uniform thickness with clear-cut edges.

##### 2.1.2.1.2.1 Road Marking

Provide equipment used for marking roads capable of placing the prescribed number of lines at a single pass as solid lines, intermittent lines, or a combination of solid and intermittent lines using a maximum of three different colors of paint as specified.

##### 2.1.2.1.2.2 Hand Application

Provide spray guns for hand application of paint in areas where the mobile paint applicator cannot be used.

#### 2.1.2.2 Thermoplastic Application Equipment

##### 2.1.2.2.1 Thermoplastic Material

Apply thermoplastic material with equipment that is capable of providing continuous uniformity in the dimensions and reflectorization of the marking.

##### 2.1.2.2.2 Application Equipment

- a. Provide application equipment capable of continuous mixing and agitation of the material, with conveying parts which prevent accumulation and clogging between the main material reservoir and the extrusion shoe or spray gun. All parts of the equipment which come into contact with the material must be easily accessible and exposed for cleaning and maintenance. All mixing and conveying parts up to and including the extrusion shoes and spray guns must maintain the material at the required temperature with heat-transfer oil or electrical-element-controlled heat.
- b. Provide application equipment constructed to ensure continuous uniformity in the dimensions of the stripe. Provide an applicator with a means for cleanly cutting off stripe ends squarely and providing a method of applying "skiplines." Provide equipment capable of applying varying widths of traffic markings.
- c. Provide mobile and maneuverable application equipment allowing straight lines to be followed and normal curves to be made in a true arc. Provide equipment used for the placement of thermoplastic pavement markings of two general types: mobile applicator and portable applicator.
- d. Equip the applicator with a pressurized or drop-on type bead dispenser capable of uniformly dispensing reflective glass spheres at controlled rates of flow. The bead dispenser must operate automatically to begin flow prior to the flow of binder to assure that the strip is fully reflectorized.

##### 2.1.2.2.3 Mobile Application Equipment

Provide a truck-mounted, self-contained pavement marking machine that is capable of hot applying thermoplastic by either the extrusion or spray method.

- a. Equip the unit to apply the thermoplastic marking material at temperatures according to the manufacturer's instructions, at widths varying from 3 to 12 inches, with an automatic pressurized or drop-on bead dispensing system, capable of operating continuously, and of installing a minimum of 20,000 lineal feet of longitudinal markings in an 8-hour day.
- b. Equip the mobile unit with a melting kettle which holds a minimum of 6000 pounds of molten thermoplastic material; capable of heating the thermoplastic composition to temperatures as recommended by the manufacturer. Use a thermostatically controlled heat transfer liquid. Heating of the composition by direct flame is not allowed. Oil and material temperature gauges must be visible at both ends of the kettle.
- c. Equip mobile units for application of extruded markings with a minimum of two extrusion shoes; located one on each side of the truck, capable

of marking simultaneous edge line and centerline stripes; each being a closed, oil-jacketed unit; holding the molten thermoplastic at a temperature as recommended by the manufacturer; and capable of extruding a line of 3 to 8 inches in width; and at a thickness of not less than 0.120 inch nor more than 0.190 inch, of generally uniform cross section.

- d. Equip mobile units for application of spray markings with a spray gun system capable of marking simultaneous edgeline and centerline stripes. Surround (jacket) the spray system with heating oil to maintain the molten thermoplastic at a temperature of 375 to 425 degrees F, capable of spraying a stripe of 3 to 12 inches in width, and in thicknesses varying from 0.060 inch to 0.098 inch, of generally uniform cross section.
- e. Equip the mobile unit with an electronic programmable line pattern control system, capable of applying skip or solid lines in any sequence, through any and all of the extrusion shoes, or the spray guns, and in programmable cycle lengths. In addition, equip the mobile unit with an automatic counting mechanism capable of recording the number of lineal feet of thermoplastic markings applied to the pavement surface with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.

#### 2.1.2.2.4 Portable Application Equipment

Provide portable hand-operated equipment, specifically designed for placing special markings such as crosswalks, stop bars, legends, arrows, and short lengths of lane, edge and centerlines; and capable of applying thermoplastic pavement markings by the extrusion method. Equip the portable applicator with all the necessary components, including a materials storage reservoir, bead dispenser, extrusion shoe, and heating accessories, capable of holding the molten thermoplastic at the temperature recommended by the manufacturer, and of extruding a line of 3 to 12 inches in width, and in thickness of not less than 0.120 inch nor more than 0.190 inch and of generally uniform cross section.

#### 2.1.2.3 Reflective Media Dispenser

Attach the dispenser for applying the reflective media to the paint or thermoplastic dispenser and designed to operate automatically and simultaneously with the applicator through the same control mechanism. The bead applicator must be capable of adjustment and designed to provide uniform flow of reflective media over the full length and width of the stripe at the rate of coverage specified in paragraph APPLICATION.

#### 2.1.2.4 Preformed Tape Application Equipment

Provide and use mechanical application equipment for the placement of preformed marking tape which is a mobile pavement marking machine specifically designed for use in applying pressure-sensitive pavement marking tape of varying widths. Equip the applicator with rollers, or other suitable compaction device to provide initial adhesion of the material with the pavement surface. Use additional tools and devices as needed to properly seat the applied material as recommended by the manufacturer.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

Use thermoplastic for roads. Use non-reflectorized waterborne or

solventborne paint for automotive parking areas. The maximum allowable VOC content of pavement markings is 150 grams per liter. Color of markings are indicated on the drawings and must conform to [ASTM D6628](#) for roads and automotive parking areas and [SAE AMS-STD-595A](#) for airfields. Provide materials conforming to the requirements specified herein.

#### 2.2.2.1 Waterborne Paint

[FS TT-P-1952](#), Type I or II .

#### 2.2.2.2 Solventborne Paint

[AASHTO M 248](#).

#### 2.2.2.3 Methacrylate Paint

Formulate methacrylate paint to meet the requirements of [FAA AC 150/5370-10](#), Item P-620.2, Methacrylate.

#### 2.2.2.4 Epoxy Paint

##### 2.2.2.4.1 Formulation

Epoxy pavement marking material will be a two component, 100 percent solids, material formulated to provide simple volumetric mixing ratio of two volumes of component A and one volume of component B unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer.

##### 2.2.2.4.2 Composition

The component A of both white and yellow must be within the following limits:

TABLE I		
	White	Yellow
Pigments	Minimum 18 percent by weight Titanium Dioxide ( <a href="#">ASTM D476</a> , Type II)	21-27 percent by weight
Epoxy Resin	75-82 percent	73-79 percent

The epoxy resin must be free of lead, cadmium, mercury, hexavalent chromium and other toxic heavy metals as defined by the Environmental Protection Agency. Submit a manufacturer's certification of compliance with this requirement.

##### 2.2.2.4.3 Epoxide Value

Determine epoxide epoxy number of the epoxy resin in accordance with [ASTM D1652](#) for white and yellow component A on pigment free basis. The epoxide number must be within plus or minus 50 of the published manufacturer's standard.



#### 2.2.4.4 Total Amine Value

Determine the amine number on the curing agent (component B) in accordance with [ASTM D2074](#). The amine number must be within plus or minus 50 of the published manufacturer's standard.

#### 2.2.4.5 Toxicity

Upon heating to application temperature, the material must not produce fumes which are toxic or injurious to persons or property.

#### 2.2.4.6 Daylight Directional Reflectance

Directional reflectance of white and yellow paint (without glass beads) in accordance with [ASTM E1347](#): White 84 percent Yellow 55 percent.

#### 2.2.4.7 Laboratory Drying Time

The epoxy pavement marking material must have a maximum no-pick-up time of 30 minutes when tested in accordance with [ASTM D711](#).

#### 2.2.4.8 Curing

The epoxy material must be capable of fully curing under a constant surface temperature of [45 Degrees F](#) or above.

#### 2.2.4.9 Adhesion to Concrete

The catalyzed epoxy pavement marking material must have a high degree of adhesion to the specified concrete surface (100 percent concrete failure) when tested according to [ASTM D7234](#). The concrete substrate must have a minimum compressive strength of [4,000 psi](#). Condition prepared specimens at a temperature of [75 plus or minus 2 Degrees F](#) for a minimum of 24 hours and a maximum of 72 hours prior to performance of the test.

#### 2.2.4.10 Hardness

Epoxy pavement marking materials must have a Shore D Hardness between 75 and 100 when tested in accordance with [ASTM D2240](#). Cure the samples at [75 plus or minus 2 Degrees F](#) for a minimum of 72 hours and a maximum of 96 hours prior to performing the tests.

#### 2.2.4.11 Abrasion Resistance

The wear index for a catalyzed sample must not exceed 82 when tested in accordance with [ASTM D4060](#) using a 1000 gram load, CS-17 wheels and a test duration of 1000 cycles. Run the test on cured samples of material which have been applied at a film thickness of 15 plus or minus 0.5 mils to code S-16 stainless steel plates. Cure the samples at [75 plus or minus 2 Degrees F](#) for a minimum of 48 hours prior to performing the tests.

#### 2.2.4.12 Tensile Strength

Epoxy pavement marking materials must have a tensile strength of at least [6,000 psi](#) when tested in accordance with [ASTM D638](#). Cast the Type IV specimens in a suitable mold and pull at the rate of [1/4 inch](#) per minute using a suitable dynamic testing machine. Cure the samples at [75 plus or minus 2 Degrees F](#) for a minimum of 12 hours and a maximum of 48 hours prior to performing the tests.

#### 2.2.4.13 Compressive Strength

Catalyzed epoxy pavement marking materials must have a compressive strength of at least 12,000 psi when tested in accordance with ASTM D695. Condition the cast sample at 75 plus or minus 2 Degrees F for a minimum of 12 hours and a maximum of 48 hours prior to performing the tests. The rate of compression of these samples must not exceed 1/4 inch per minute.

#### 2.2.5 Thermoplastic Compound

##### 2.2.5.1 Composition Requirements

Thermoplastic compound must conform to AASHTO M 249. Formulate the binder component as an alkyd resin.

##### 2.2.5.2 Primer

- a. Asphalt concrete primer: Provide thermosetting adhesive primer with a solids content of pigment reinforced synthetic rubber and synthetic plastic resin dissolved or dispersed in a volatile organic solvent for asphaltic concrete pavements. The solids content must not be less than 10 percent by weight at 70 degrees F and 60 percent relative humidity. A wet film thickness of 0.005 inch, plus or minus 0.001 inch, must dry to a tack-free condition in less than 5 minutes.
- b. Portland cement concrete primer: Provide an epoxy resin primer for Portland cement concrete pavements, of the type recommended by the manufacturer of the thermoplastic composition.

##### 2.2.6 Preformed Tape

Provide adherent reflectorized strip preformed tape in accordance with ASTM D4505 Retroreflectivity Level II, Class 1, 2 or 3, Skid Resistance Level B.

##### 2.2.7 Reflective Media

##### 2.2.7.1 Reflective Media for Roads

FS TT-B-1325, Type I, Gradation A .

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

##### 3.1.1 Testing for Moisture

Test the pavement surface for moisture before beginning pavement marking after each period of rainfall, fog, high humidity, or cleaning, or when the ambient temperature has fallen below the dew point. Do not commence marking until the pavement is sufficiently dry and the pavement condition has been approved by the Contracting Officer or authorized representative.

Employ the "plastic wrap method" to test the pavement for moisture as follows: Cover the pavement with a 12 inch by 12 inch section of clear plastic wrap and seal the edges with tape. After 15 minutes, examine the plastic wrap for any visible moisture accumulation inside the plastic. Do not begin marking operations until the test can be performed with no

visible moisture accumulation inside the plastic wrap. Re-test surfaces when work has been stopped due to rain.

### 3.1.2 Surface Preparation Demonstration

Prior to surface preparation, demonstrate the proposed procedures and equipment. Prepare areas large enough to determine , adhesion of remaining coating and rate of cleaning. Approved demonstration area establishes the standard for the remainder of the work.

### 3.1.3 Test Stripe Demonstration

Prior to paint application, demonstrate test stripe application within the work area using the proposed materials and equipment. Apply separate test stripes in each of the line widths and configurations required herein using the proposed equipment. Make the test stripes long enough to determine the proper speed and operating pressures for the vehicle(s) and machinery, but not less than 50 feet long.

### 3.1.4 Application Rate Demonstration

During the Test Stripe Demonstration, demonstrate compliance with the application rates specified herein. Document the equipment speed and operating pressures required to meet the specified rates in each configuration of the equipment and provide a copy of the documentation to the Contracting Officer prior to proceeding with the work.

### 3.1.5 Level of Performance Demonstration

The Contracting Officer will be present at the application demonstrations to observe the results obtained and to validate the operating parameters of the vehicle(s) and equipment. If accepted by the Contracting Officer, the test stripe is the measure of performance required for this project. Do not proceed with the work until the demonstration results are satisfactory to the Contracting Officer.

## 3.2 EXTERIOR SURFACE PREPARATION

Allow new pavement surfaces to cure for a period of not less than 30 days before application of marking materials. Thoroughly clean surfaces to be marked before application of the paint. Remove dust, dirt, and other granular surface deposits by sweeping, blowing with compressed air, rinsing with water, or a combination of these methods as required. Remove rubber deposits, existing paint markings, residual curing compounds, and other coatings adhering to the pavement by water blasting.

- a. For Portland Cement Concrete pavement, grinding, light shot blasting, or light scarification, to a resulting profile equal to ICRI 03732 CSP 2, CSP 3, and CSP 4, respectively, can be used in addition to water blasting on most pavements, to either remove existing coatings, or for surface preparation.
- b. Do not use shot blasting on airfield pavements due to the potential of Foreign Object Damage (FOD) to aircraft. Scrub affected areas, where oil or grease is present on old pavements to be marked, with several applications of trisodium phosphate solution or other approved detergent or degreaser and rinse thoroughly after each application. After cleaning oil-soaked areas, seal with shellac or primer recommended by the manufacturer to prevent bleeding through the new

paint. Do not commence painting in any area until pavement surfaces are dry and clean.

### 3.2.1 Early Painting of Rigid Pavements

Pretreat rigid pavements that require early painting with an aqueous solution containing 3 percent phosphoric acid and 2 percent zinc chloride. Apply the solution to the areas to be marked.

### 3.2.2 Early Painting of Asphalt Pavements

For asphalt pavement systems requiring painting application at less than 30 days, apply the paint and beads at half the normal application rate, followed by a second application at the normal rate after 30 days.

## 3.3 APPLICATION

Apply pavement markings to dry pavements only.

### 3.3.1 Paint

Apply paint with approved equipment at rate of coverage specified herein. Provide guidelines and templates as necessary to control paint application. Take special precautions in marking numbers, letters, and symbols. Manually paint numbers, letters, and symbols. Sharply outline all edges of markings. The maximum drying time requirements of the paint specifications will be strictly enforced, to prevent undue softening of bitumen, and pickup, displacement, or discoloration by tires of traffic. If there is a deficiency in drying of the markings, painting operations must cease until the cause of the slow drying is determined and corrected.

#### 3.3.1.1 Waterborne Paint

##### 3.3.1.1.1 Roads

Apply paint at a rate of 105 plus or minus 5 square feet per gallon. Apply FS TT-B-1325 Type I (Gradation A) beads at a rate of 7 plus or minus 0.5 pounds of glass spheres per gallon.

#### 3.3.1.2 Solventborne Paint

Apply paint at a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils. Apply FS TT-B-1325 Type I (Gradation A) beads at a minimum rate of 6 pounds of glass spheres per gallon.

#### 3.3.1.3 Methacrylate Paint

Apply paint evenly to the pavement surface at a maximum rate of 45 square feet per gallon. Apply glass spheres conforming to FS TT-B-1325 uniformly to the wet paint on airfield pavement. Use either Type I (Gradation A), Type III, or Type IV (Gradation A or B) beads. Apply Type I (Gradation A) beads at a minimum rate of 15 pounds of glass spheres per gallon. Apply Type III beads at a minimum rate of 20 pounds of glass spheres per gallon. Apply Type IV (Gradation A or B) beads at a minimum rate of 16 pounds of glass spheres per gallon.

#### 3.3.1.4 Epoxy Paint

Apply paint evenly to the pavement surface at a wet film thickness of 20 mils plus or minus 1 mil to cover 80 plus or minus 4 square feet per gallon. Apply glass spheres uniformly to the wet paint on road and street pavement at a rate of 7 plus or minus 0.5 pounds of glass spheres per gallon.

#### 3.3.2 Thermoplastic Compound

Place thermoplastic pavement markings, free from dirt or tint, upon dry pavement. The temperature must be a minimum of 40 degrees F and rising at the time of installation. Apply all centerline, skipline, edgeline, and other longitudinal type markings with a mobile applicator. Place all special markings, crosswalks, stop bars, legends, arrows, and similar patterns with a portable applicator, using the extrusion method.

##### 3.3.2.1 Primer

After surface preparation has been completed, prime the asphalt or concrete pavement surface with spray equipment. Allow primer materials to "set-up" prior to applying the thermoplastic composition. Allow the asphalt concrete primer to dry to a tack-free condition, usually occurring in less than 10 minutes. Allow the Portland cement concrete primer to dry in accordance with the thermoplastic manufacturer recommendations. To shorten the curing time of the epoxy resins, an infrared heating device may be used on the concrete primer. Apply asphalt concrete primer to all asphalt concrete pavements at a wet film thickness of 0.005 inch, plus or minus 0.001 inch (265 to 400 square feet per gallon). Apply Portland cement concrete primer to all concrete pavements (including concrete bridge decks) at a wet film thickness of between 0.04 to 0.05 inch 320 to 400 square feet per gallon.

After the primer has "set-up", apply the thermoplastic at temperatures no lower than 375 degrees F nor higher than 425 degrees F at the point of deposition. Apply all extruded thermoplastic markings at the specified width and at a thickness of not less than 0.125 inch nor more than 0.190 inch. Apply all sprayed thermoplastic markings at the specified width and the thickness designated in the contract plans. If the plans do not specify a thickness, apply centerline markings at a wet thickness of 0.090 inch, plus or minus 0.005 inch, and edgeline markings at a wet thickness of 0.060 inch, plus or minus 0.005 inch.

##### 3.3.2.2 Reflective Media

Immediately after installation of the thermoplastic material, mechanically apply drop-on reflective glass spheres conforming to FS TT-B-1325 Type I (Gradation A) and AASHTO M 247 Type 1 at the rate of one pound per 20 square feet such that the spheres are held by and imbedded in the surface of the molten material. Accomplish drop-on application of the glass spheres to ensure even distribution at the specified rate of coverage. If there is a malfunction of either thermoplastic applicator or reflective media dispenser, discontinue operations until deficiency is corrected.

#### 3.3.3 Raised Pavement Markers

Align prefabricated markers carefully at the spacing indicated on the drawings and permanently fix in place by means of epoxy adhesives. To ensure good bond prior to applying adhesive, thoroughly clean all areas where markers are to be set by water blasting and use of compressed air.

### 3.3.4 Preformed Tape

The pavement surface and ambient air temperature must be a minimum of 60 degrees F and rising. Place the preformed markings in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3.5 Cleanup and Waste Disposal

Keep the worksite clean and free of debris and waste from the removal and application operations. Dispose of debris at approved sites.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

### 3.4.1 Sampling and Testing

As soon as the paint and thermoplastic materials and reflective media are available for sampling, obtain by random selection from the sealed containers, two quart samples of each batch in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Accomplish adequate mixing prior to sampling to ensure a uniform, representative sample. A batch is defined as that quantity of material processed by the manufacturer at one time and identified by number on the label. Clearly identify samples by designated name, specification number, batch number, project contract number, intended use, and quantity involved.

At the discretion of the Contracting Officer, samples provided may be tested by the Government for verification.

### 3.4.2 Material Inspection

Examine material at the job site to determine that it is the material referenced in the report of test results or certificate of compliance. Provide test results substantiating conformance to the specified requirements with each certificate of compliance.

### 3.4.3 Dimensional Tolerances

Apply all markings in the standard dimensions provide in the drawings. New markings may deviate a maximum of 10 percent larger than the standard dimension. The maximum deviation allowed when painting over an old marking is up to 20 percent larger than the standard dimensions.

### 3.4.4 Bond Failure Verification

Inspect newly applied markings for signs of bond failure based on visual inspection and comparison to results from Test Stripe Demonstration paragraph.

### 3.4.5 Reflective Media and Coating Application Verification

Use a wet film thickness gauge to measure the application of wet paint. Use a microscope or magnifying glass to evaluate the embedment of glass beads in the paint. Verify the glass bead embedment with approximately 50 percent of the individual bead spheres embedded and 50 percent of the individual bead spheres exposed.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 32 92 19

SEEDING

08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C602	(2019) Agricultural Liming Materials
ASTM D4427	(2018) Standard Classification of Peat Samples by Laboratory Testing
ASTM D4972	(2018) Standard Test Methods for pH of Soils

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA)

AMS Seed Act	(1940; R 1988; R 1998) Federal Seed Act
DOA SSIR 42	(1996) Soil Survey Investigation Report No. 42, Soil Survey Laboratory Methods Manual, Version 3.0

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Stand of Turf

95 percent ground cover of the established species.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK, applies to this section for pesticide use and plant establishment requirements, with additions and modifications herein.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Wood Cellulose Fiber Mulch

Fertilizer

Include physical characteristics, and recommendations.

SD-06 Test Reports

Topsoil Composition Tests (reports and recommendations).

#### SD-07 Certificates

State Certification and Approval for Seed

#### SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

#### Erosion Control Materials

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

#### 1.5.1 Delivery

##### 1.5.1.1 Seed Protection

Protect from drying out and from contamination during delivery, on-site storage, and handling.

##### 1.5.1.2 Fertilizer Gypsum Sulfur Iron and Lime Delivery

Deliver to the site in original, unopened containers bearing manufacturer's chemical analysis, name, trade name, trademark, and indication of conformance to state and federal laws. Instead of containers, fertilizer gypsum sulphur iron and lime may be furnished in bulk with certificate indicating the above information.

#### 1.5.2 Storage

##### 1.5.2.1 Seed, Fertilizer Gypsum Sulfur Iron and Lime Storage

Store in cool, dry locations away from contaminants.

##### 1.5.2.2 Topsoil

Prior to stockpiling topsoil, treat growing vegetation with application of appropriate specified non-selective herbicide. Clear and grub existing vegetation three to four weeks prior to stockpiling topsoil.

##### 1.5.2.3 Handling

Do not drop or dump materials from vehicles.

### 1.6 TIME RESTRICTIONS AND PLANTING CONDITIONS

#### 1.6.1 Restrictions

Do not plant when the ground is frozen, snow covered, muddy, or when air temperature exceeds 90 degrees Fahrenheit.

### 1.7 TIME LIMITATIONS

#### 1.7.1 Seed

Apply seed within twenty four hours after seed bed preparation.



## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SEED

#### 2.1.1 Classification

Provide State-certified seed of the latest season's crop delivered in original sealed packages, bearing producer's guaranteed analysis for percentages of mixtures, purity, germination, weedseed content, and inert material. Label in conformance with [AMS Seed Act](#) and applicable state seed laws. Wet, moldy, or otherwise damaged seed will be rejected. Field mixes will be acceptable when field mix is performed on site in the presence of the Contracting Officer.

#### 2.1.2 Planting Dates

[See Construction Plans.](#)

#### 2.1.3 Seed Purity

[See Construction Plans.](#)

#### 2.1.4 Seed Mixture by Weight

[See Construction Plans.](#)

Proportion seed mixtures by weight. Temporary seeding must later be replaced by plantings for a permanent stand of grass. The same requirements of turf establishment apply for temporary seeding.

### 2.2 TOPSOIL

#### 2.2.1 On-Site Topsoil

Surface soil stripped and stockpiled on site and modified as necessary to meet the requirements specified for topsoil in paragraph COMPOSITION. When available topsoil must be existing surface soil stripped and stockpiled on-site in accordance with Section [31 00 00 EARTHWORK](#).

#### 2.2.2 Off-Site Topsoil

Conform to requirements specified in paragraph COMPOSITION. Additional topsoil must be furnished by the Contractor.

#### 2.2.3 Composition

Containing from 5 to 10 percent organic matter as determined by the [topsoil composition tests](#) of the Organic Carbon, 6A, Chemical Analysis Method described in [DOA SSIR 42](#). Maximum particle size, [3/4 inch](#), with maximum 3 percent retained on [1/4 inch](#) screen. The pH must be tested in accordance with [ASTM D4972](#). Topsoil must be free of sticks, stones, roots, and other debris and objectionable materials. Other components must conform to the following limits:

Silt	25-50 percent
Clay	10-30 percent

Sand	20-35 percent
pH	5.5 to 7.0
Soluble Salts	600 ppm maximum

## 2.3 SOIL CONDITIONERS

Add conditioners to topsoil as required to bring into compliance with "composition" standard for topsoil as specified herein.

### 2.3.1 Lime

Commercial grade hydrate limestone containing a calcium carbonate equivalent (C.C.E.) as specified in [ASTM C602](#) of not less than 80 percent.

### 2.3.2 Aluminum Sulfate

Commercial grade.

### 2.3.3 Sulfur

100 percent elemental

### 2.3.4 Iron

100 percent elemental

### 2.3.5 Peat

Natural product of peat moss derived from a freshwater site and conforming to [ASTM D4427](#). Shred and granulate peat to pass a 1/2 inch mesh screen and condition in storage pile for minimum 6 months after excavation.

### 2.3.6 Sand

Clean and free of materials harmful to plants.

### 2.3.7 Perlite

Horticultural grade.

### 2.3.8 Composted Derivatives

Ground bark, nitrolized sawdust, humus or other green wood waste material free of stones, sticks, and soil stabilized with nitrogen and having the following properties:

#### 2.3.8.1 Particle Size

Minimum percent by weight passing:

No. 4 mesh screen	95
No. 8 mesh screen	80

#### 2.3.8.2 Nitrogen Content

Minimum percent based on dry weight:

Fir Sawdust	0.7
Fir or Pine Bark	1.0

#### 2.3.9 Gypsum

Coarsely ground gypsum comprised of calcium sulfate dihydrate 80 percent, calcium 18 percent, sulfur 14 percent; minimum 96 percent passing through 20 mesh screen, 100 percent passing thru 16 mesh screen.

#### 2.3.10 Calcined Clay

Calcined clay must be granular particles produced from montmorillonite clay calcined to a minimum temperature of 1200 degrees F. Gradation: A minimum 90 percent must pass a No. 8 sieve; a minimum 99 percent must be retained on a No. 60 sieve; and material passing a No. 100 sieve must not exceed 2 percent. Bulk density: A maximum 40 pounds per cubic foot.

### 2.4 FERTILIZER

#### 2.4.1 Granular Fertilizer

Organic, granular controlled release fertilizer containing Nitrogen, phosphorous, potassium, sulfur, and iron in amounts recommended in soil reports from qualified soil-testing laboratories.

### 2.5 MULCH

Mulch must be free from noxious weeds, mold, and other deleterious materials.

#### 2.5.1 Straw

Stalks from oats, wheat, rye, barley, or rice. Furnish in air-dry condition and of proper consistency for placing with commercial mulch blowing equipment. Straw must contain no fertile seed.

#### 2.5.2 Hay

Air-dry condition and of proper consistency for placing with commercial mulch blowing equipment. Hay must be sterile, containing no fertile seed.

#### 2.5.3 Wood Cellulose Fiber Mulch

Use recovered materials of either paper-based (100 percent post-consumer content) or wood-based (100 percent total recovered content) hydraulic mulch. Processed to contain no growth or germination-inhibiting factors and dyed an appropriate color to facilitate visual metering of materials application. Composition on air-dry weight basis: 9 to 15 percent moisture, pH range from 5.5 to 8.2. Use with hydraulic application of grass seed and fertilizer.

### 2.6 WATER

Source of water must be approved by Contracting Officer and of suitable quality for irrigation, containing no elements toxic to plant life.

## 2.7 EROSION CONTROL MATERIALS

Erosion control material must conform to the following:

### 2.7.1 Erosion Control Blanket

70 percent agricultural straw/30 percent coconut fiber matrix stitched with a degradable nettings, designed to degrade within 12 months.

### 2.7.2 Erosion Control Fabric

Fabric must be knitted construction of polypropylene yarn with uniform mesh openings  $\frac{3}{4}$  to 1 inch square with strips of biodegradable paper. Filler paper strips must have a minimum life of 6 months.

### 2.7.3 Erosion Control Net

Net must be heavy, twisted jute mesh, weighing approximately 1.22 pounds per linear yard and 4 feet wide with mesh openings of approximately one inch square.

### 2.7.4 Hydrophilic Colloids

Hydrophilic colloids must be physiologically harmless to plant and animal life without phytotoxic agents. Colloids must be naturally occurring, silicate powder based, and must form a water insoluble membrane after curing. Colloids must resist mold growth.

### 2.7.5 Erosion Control Material Anchors

Erosion control anchors must be as recommended by the manufacturer.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

#### 3.1.1 EXTENT OF WORK

Provide soil preparation prior to planting (including soil conditioners as required), fertilizing, seeding, and surface topdressing of all newly graded finished earth surfaces, unless indicated otherwise, and at all areas inside or outside the limits of construction that are disturbed by the Contractor's operations.

##### 3.1.1.1 Topsoil

Provide 4 inches of on-site topsoil to meet indicated finish grade. After areas have been brought to indicated finish grade, incorporate fertilizer pH adjusters and soil conditioners into soil a minimum depth of 4 inches by disking, harrowing, tilling or other method approved by the Contracting Officer. Remove debris and stones larger than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch in any dimension remaining on the surface after finish grading. Correct irregularities in finish surfaces to eliminate depressions. Protect finished topsoil areas from damage by vehicular or pedestrian traffic.

##### 3.1.1.2 Soil Conditioner Application Rates

Apply soil conditioners at rates as determined by laboratory soil analysis of the soils at the job site.

### 3.1.1.3 Fertilizer Application Rates

Apply fertilizer at rates as determined by laboratory soil analysis of the soils at the job site.

## 3.2 SEEDING

### 3.2.1 Seed Application Seasons and Conditions

Immediately before seeding, restore soil to proper grade. Do not seed when ground is muddy, frozen, snow covered or in an unsatisfactory condition for seeding. If special conditions exist that may warrant a variance in the above seeding dates or conditions, submit a written request to the Contracting Officer stating the special conditions and proposed variance. Apply seed within twenty four hours after seedbed preparation. Sow seed by approved sowing equipment. Sow one-half the seed in one direction, and sow remainder at right angles to the first sowing.

### 3.2.2 Seed Application Method

Seeding method must be broadcasted and drop seeding.

#### 3.2.2.1 Broadcast and Drop Seeding

Seed must be uniformly broadcast at the rate recommended by the manufacturer. Use broadcast or drop seeders. Sow one-half the seed in one direction, and sow remainder at right angles to the first sowing. Cover seed uniformly to a maximum depth of 1/4 inch in clay soils and 1/2 inch in sandy soils by means of spike-tooth harrow, cultipacker, raking or other approved devices.

### 3.2.3 Mulching

#### 3.2.3.1 Hay or Straw Mulch

Hay or straw mulch must be spread uniformly at the rate of 2 tons per acre. Mulch must be spread by hand, blower-type mulch spreader, or other approved method. Mulching must be started on the windward side of relatively flat areas or on the upper part of steep slopes, and continued uniformly until the area is covered. The mulch must not be bunched or clumped. Sunlight must not be completely excluded from penetrating to the ground surface. All areas installed with seed must be mulched on the same day as the seeding. Mulch must be anchored immediately following spreading.

#### 3.2.3.2 Mechanical Anchor

Mechanical anchor must be a V-type-wheel land packer; a scalloped-disk land packer designed to force mulch into the soil surface; or other suitable equipment.

#### 3.2.3.3 Asphalt Adhesive Tackifier

Asphalt adhesive tackifier must be sprayed at a rate between 10 to 13 gallons per 1000 square feet. Sunlight must not be completely excluded from penetrating to the ground surface.

#### 3.2.3.4 Non-Asphaltic Tackifier

Hydrophilic colloid must be applied at the rate recommended by the

manufacturer, using hydraulic equipment suitable for thoroughly mixing with water. A uniform mixture must be applied over the area.

#### 3.2.3.5 Asphalt Adhesive Coated Mulch

Hay or straw mulch may be spread simultaneously with asphalt adhesive applied at a rate between 10 to 13 gallons per 1000 square feet, using power mulch equipment which must be equipped with suitable asphalt pump and nozzle. The adhesive-coated mulch must be applied evenly over the surface. Sunlight must not be completely excluded from penetrating to the ground surface.

#### 3.2.4 Rolling

Immediately after seeding, firm entire area except for slopes in excess of 3 to 1 with a roller not exceeding 90 pounds for each foot of roller width.

If seeding is performed with cultipacker-type seeder or by hydroseeding, rolling may be eliminated.

#### 3.2.5 Erosion Control Material

Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, where indicated or as directed by the Contracting Officer.

#### 3.2.6 Watering

Start watering areas seeded as required by temperature and wind conditions. Apply water at a rate sufficient to insure thorough wetting of soil to a depth of 2 inches without run off. During the germination process, seed is to be kept actively growing and not allowed to dry out.

### 3.3 PROTECTION OF TURF AREAS

Immediately after turfing, protect area against traffic and other use.

### 3.4 RENOVATION OF EXISTING TURF AREA

#### 3.4.1 Aeration

Upon completion of weed eradication operations and Contracting Officer's approval to proceed, aerate turf areas indicated, by approved device. Core, by pulling soil plugs, to a minimum depth of 2 inches. Leave all soil plugs, that are produced, in the turf area.

Blend all parts of topdressing mixture to a uniform consistency throughout.

Keep clean at all times at least one paved pedestrian access route and one paved vehicular access route to each building. Clean all soil plugs off of other paving when work is complete.

#### 3.4.2 Vertical Mowing

Upon completion of aerating operation and Contracting Officer's approval to proceed, vertical mow turf areas indicated, by approved device, to a depth of 1/2 inch above existing soil level, to reduce thatch build-up, grain, and surface compaction. Keep clean at all times at least one paved pedestrian access route and one paved vehicular access route to each building. Clean other paving when work is complete. Remove all debris generated during this operation off site.

#### 3.4.3 Dethatching

Upon completion of aerating operation and Contracting Officer's approval to proceed, dethatch turf areas indicated, by approved device, to a depth of 1/2 inch below existing soil level, to reduce thatch build-up, grain, and surface compaction. Keep clean at all times at least one paved pedestrian access route and one paved vehicular access route to each building. Clean other paving when work is complete. Remove all debris generated during this operation off site.

#### 3.4.4 Overseeding

Apply seed in accordance with and at rates indicated in applicable portions of paragraph SEED APPLICATION METHOD.

#### 3.5 RESTORATION

Restore to original condition existing turf areas which have been damaged during turf installation operations at the Contractor's expense. Keep clean at all times at least one paved pedestrian access route and one paved vehicular access route to each building. Clean other paving when work in adjacent areas is complete.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



SECTION 33 71 02

UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION

02/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)

AASHTO HB-17 (2002; Errata 2003; Errata 2005, 17th  
Edition) Standard Specifications for  
Highway Bridges

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE (ACI)

ACI 318M (2014; ERTA 2015) Building Code  
Requirements for Structural Concrete &  
Commentary

ACI SP-66 (2004) ACI Detailing Manual

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B1 (2013) Standard Specification for  
Hard-Drawn Copper Wire

ASTM B8 (2011; R 2017) Standard Specification for  
Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors,  
Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft

ASTM C32 (2013; R 2017) Standard Specification for  
Sewer and Manhole Brick (Made from Clay or  
Shale)

ASTM C309 (2011) Standard Specification for Liquid  
Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing  
Concrete

ASTM C478 (2018) Standard Specification for Circular  
Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole  
Sections

ASTM C857 (2016) Standard Practice for Minimum  
Structural Design Loading for Underground  
Precast Concrete Utility Structures

ASTM C990 (2009; R 2014) Standard Specification for  
Joints for Concrete Pipe, Manholes and  
Precast Box Sections Using Preformed  
Flexible Joint Sealants

ASTM F2160	(2016) Standard Specification for Solid Wall High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Conduit Based on Controlled Outside Diameter (OD)
INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)	
IEEE 81	(2012) Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System
IEEE C2	(2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017) National Electrical Safety Code
IEEE Stds Dictionary	(2009) IEEE Standards Dictionary: Glossary of Terms & Definitions
INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)	
NETA ATS	(2017; Errata 2017) Standard for Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Equipment and Systems
NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)	
NEMA RN 1	(2005; R 2013) Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Externally Coated Galvanized Rigid Steel Conduit and Intermediate Metal Conduit
NEMA TC 2	(2020) Standard for Electrical Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Conduit
NEMA TC 7	(2016) Smooth-Wall Coilable Electrical Polyethylene Conduit
NEMA TC 9	(2020) Standard for Fittings for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Plastic Utilities Duct for Underground Installation
NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)	
NFPA 70	(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4) National Electrical Code
SOCIETY OF CABLE TELECOMMUNICATIONS ENGINEERS (SCTE)	
ANSI/SCTE 77	(2013) Specification for Underground Enclosure Integrity
TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)	
TIA-758	(2012b) Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA)	
RUS Bull 1751F-644	(2002) Underground Plant Construction

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

CID A-A-60005

(Basic; Notice 2) Frames, Covers,  
Gratings, Steps, Sump And Catch Basin,  
Manhole

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 6

(2007; Reprint Sep 2019) UL Standard for  
Safety Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel

UL 94

(2013; Reprint Sep 2017) UL Standard for  
Safety Tests for Flammability of Plastic  
Materials for Parts in Devices and  
Appliances

UL 467

(2013; Reprint Jun 2017) UL Standard for  
Safety Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL 514A

(2013; Reprint Aug 2017) UL Standard for  
Safety Metallic Outlet Boxes

UL 514B

(2012; Reprint May 2020) Conduit, Tubing  
and Cable Fittings

UL 651

(2011; Reprint Mar 2020) UL Standard for  
Safety Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A  
Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- a. Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in these specifications, and on the drawings, are as defined in **IEEE Stds Dictionary**.
- b. In the text of this section, the words conduit and duct are used interchangeably and have the same meaning.
- c. In the text of this section, "medium voltage cable splices," and "medium voltage cable joints" are used interchangeably and have the same meaning.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section **01 33 00**  
SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

**SD-02 Shop Drawings**

Precast underground structures; G

**SD-03 Product Data**

Precast concrete structures; G

Sealing Material

Pulling-In Irons

Manhole frames and covers; G

Handhole frames and covers; G

Composite/fiberglass handholes; G

Cable supports (racks, arms and insulators); G

SD-06 Test Reports

Field Acceptance Checks and Tests; G

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Precast Underground Structures

Submittal required for each type used. Provide calculations and drawings for precast manholes and handholes bearing the seal of a registered professional engineer including:

- a. Material description (i.e., f'c and Fy)
- b. Manufacturer's printed assembly and installation instructions
- c. Design calculations
- d. Reinforcing shop drawings in accordance with ACI SP-66
- e. Plans and elevations showing opening and pulling-in iron locations and details

1.4.2 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship must be in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of IEEE C2 and NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

1.4.3 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship. Products must have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year period must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product must have been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items must be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

#### 1.4.3.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

#### 1.4.3.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 3 years prior to date of delivery to site are not acceptable, unless specified otherwise.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONDUIT, DUCTS, AND FITTINGS

##### 2.1.1 Rigid Metal Conduit

UL 6.

##### 2.1.1.1 Rigid Metallic Conduit, PVC Coated

NEMA RN 1, Type A40, except that hardness must be nominal 85 Shore A durometer, dielectric strength must be minimum 400 volts per mil at 60 Hz, and tensile strength must be minimum 3500 psi.

##### 2.1.2 Plastic Conduit for Direct Burial and Riser Applications

UL 651 and NEMA TC 2, EPC-80.

##### 2.1.3 Plastic Duct for Concrete Encasement

Provide Type EPC-40 per UL 651 and NEMA TC 2.

##### 2.1.4 High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Electrical Conduit for Directional Boring

Smoothwall, approved/listed for directional boring, minimum Schedule 80, ASTM F2160, NEMA TC 7.

##### 2.1.5 Innerduct

Provide fabric-mesh innerducts, with pullwire. Size as indicated.

##### 2.1.6 Duct Sealant

UL 94, Class HBF. Provide high-expansion urethane foam duct sealant that expands and hardens to form a closed, chemically and water resistant, rigid structure. Sealant must be compatible with common cable and wire jackets and capable of adhering to metals, plastics and concrete. Sealant must be capable of curing in temperature ranges of 35 degrees F to 95 degrees F. Cured sealant must withstand temperature ranges of -20 degrees F to 200 degrees F without loss of function.

##### 2.1.7 Fittings

##### 2.1.7.1 Metal Fittings

UL 514B.

#### 2.1.7.2 PVC Duct Fittings

NEMA TC 9.

#### 2.1.7.3 Outlet Boxes for Steel Conduit

Outlet boxes for use with rigid or flexible steel conduit must be cast-metal cadmium or zinc-coated if of ferrous metal with gasketed closures and must conform to UL 514A.

#### 2.2 PULL ROPE

Plastic or flat pull line (bull line) having a minimum tensile strength of 200 pounds.

#### 2.3 GROUNDING AND BONDING

##### 2.3.1 Driven Ground Rods

Provide copper-clad steel ground rods conforming to UL 467 not less than 3/4 inch in diameter by 10 feet in length. Sectional type rods may be used for rods 20 feet or longer.

##### 2.3.2 Grounding Conductors

Stranded-bare copper conductors must conform to ASTM B8, Class B, soft-drawn unless otherwise indicated. Solid-bare copper conductors must conform to ASTM B1 for sizes No. 8 and smaller. Insulated conductors must be of the same material as phase conductors and green color-coded, except that conductors must be rated no more than 600 volts. Aluminum is not acceptable.

#### 2.4 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

Provide concrete in accordance with Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE. In addition, provide concrete for encasement of underground ducts with 3000 psi minimum 28-day compressive strength. Concrete associated with electrical work for other than encasement of underground ducts must be 4000 psi minimum 28-day compressive strength unless specified otherwise.

#### 2.5 UNDERGROUND STRUCTURES

Provide precast concrete underground structures or standard type cast-in-place manhole types as indicated, conforming to ASTM C857 and ASTM C478. Top, walls, and bottom must consist of reinforced concrete. Walls and bottom must be of monolithic concrete construction. Locate duct entrances and windows near the corners of structures to facilitate cable racking. Covers must fit the frames without undue play. Form steel and iron to shape and size with sharp lines and angles. Castings must be free from warp and blow holes that may impair strength or appearance. Exposed metal must have a smooth finish and sharp lines and arises. Provide necessary lugs, rabbets, and brackets. Set pulling-in irons and other built-in items in place before depositing concrete. Install a pulling-in iron in the wall opposite each duct line entrance. Cable racks, including rack arms and insulators, must be adequate to accommodate the cable.

#### 2.5.1 Cast-In-Place Concrete Structures

Concrete must conform to Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE. Construct walls on a footing of cast-in-place concrete except that precast concrete base sections may be used for precast concrete manhole risers.

#### 2.5.2 Precast Concrete Structures, Risers and Tops

Precast concrete underground structures may be provided in lieu of cast-in-place subject to the requirements specified below. Precast units must be the product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of precast concrete products, including precast manholes.

##### 2.5.2.1 General

Precast concrete structures must have the same accessories and facilities as required for cast-in-place structures. Likewise, precast structures must have plan area and clear heights not less than those of cast-in-place structures. Concrete materials and methods of construction must be the same as for cast-in-place concrete construction, as modified herein. Slope in floor may be omitted provided precast sections are poured in reinforced steel forms. Concrete for precast work must have a 28-day compressive strength of not less than 4000 psi. Structures may be precast to the design and details indicated for cast-in-place construction, precast monolithically and placed as a unit, or structures may be assembled sections, designed and produced by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements specified. Structures must be identified with the manufacturer's name embedded in or otherwise permanently attached to an interior wall face.

##### 2.5.2.2 Design for Precast Structures

ACI 318M. In the absence of detailed on-site soil information, design for the following soil parameters/site conditions:

- a. Angle of Internal Friction ( $\phi$ ) = 30 degrees
- b. Unit Weight of Soil (Dry) = 110 pcf, (Saturated) = 130 pcf
- c. Coefficient of Lateral Earth Pressure ( $K_a$ ) = 0.33
- d. Ground Water Level = 3 feet below ground elevation
- e. Vertical design loads must include full dead, superimposed dead, and live loads including a 30 percent magnification factor for impact. Live loads must consider all types and magnitudes of vehicular (automotive, industrial, or aircraft) traffic to be encountered. The minimum design vertical load must be for H20 highway loading per AASHTO HB-17.
- f. Horizontal design loads must include full geostatic and hydrostatic pressures for the soil parameters, water table, and depth of installation to be encountered. Also, horizontal loads imposed by adjacent structure foundations, and horizontal load components of vertical design loads, including impact, must be considered, along with a pulling-in iron design load of 6000 pounds.
- g. Each structural component must be designed for the load combination and

positioning resulting in the maximum shear and moment for that particular component.

- h. Design must also consider the live loads induced in the handling, installation, and backfilling of the manholes. Provide lifting devices to ensure structural integrity during handling and installation.

#### 2.5.2.3 Construction

Structure top, bottom, and wall must be of a uniform thickness of not less than 6 inches. Thin-walled knock-out panels for designed or future duct bank entrances are not permitted. Provide quantity, size, and location of duct bank entrance windows as directed, and cast completely open by the precaster. Size of windows must exceed the nominal duct bank envelope dimensions by at least 12 inches vertically and horizontally to preclude in-field window modifications made necessary by duct bank misalignment. However, the sides of precast windows must be a minimum of 6 inches from the inside surface of adjacent walls, floors, or ceilings. Form the perimeter of precast window openings to have a keyed or inward flared surface to provide a positive interlock with the mating duct bank envelope. Provide welded wire fabric reinforcing through window openings for in-field cutting and flaring into duct bank envelopes. Provide additional reinforcing steel comprised of at least two No. 4 bars around window openings. Provide drain sumps a minimum of 12 inches in diameter and 4 inches deep for precast structures.

#### 2.5.2.4 Joints

Provide tongue-and-groove joints on mating edges of precast components. Shiplap joints are not allowed. Design joints to firmly interlock adjoining components and to provide waterproof junctions and adequate shear transfer. Seal joints watertight using preformed plastic strip conforming to ASTM C990. Install sealing material in strict accordance with the sealant manufacturer's printed instructions. Provide waterproofing at conduit/duct entrances into structures, and where access frame meets the top slab, provide continuous grout seal.

#### 2.5.3 Manhole Frames and Covers

Provide cast iron frames and covers for manholes conforming to CID A-A-60005. Cast the words "ELECTRIC" or "TELECOMMUNICATIONS" in the top face of power and telecommunications manhole covers, respectively.

#### 2.5.4 Handhole Frames and Covers

Frames and covers of steel must be welded by qualified welders in accordance with standard commercial practice. Steel covers must be rolled-steel floor plate having an approved antislip surface. Hinges must be of stainless steel with bronze hinge pin, 5 by 5 inches by approximately 3/16 inch thick, without screw holes, and must be for full surface application by fillet welding. Hinges must have nonremovable pins and five knuckles. The surfaces of plates under hinges must be true after the removal of raised antislip surface, by grinding or other approved method.

#### 2.5.5 Brick for Manhole Collar

Provide sewer and manhole brick conforming to ASTM C32, Grade MS.



#### 2.5.6 Composite/Fiberglass Handholes and Covers

ANSI/SCTE 77. Provide handholes and covers of polymer concrete, reinforced with heavy weave fiberglass with a design load (Tier rating) appropriate for or greater than the intended use. All covers are required to have the Tier level rating embossed on the surface and this rating must not exceed the design load of the box.

#### 2.6 CABLE SUPPORTS (RACKS, ARMS, AND INSULATORS)

The metal portion of racks and arms must be zinc-coated after fabrication.

##### 2.6.1 Cable Rack Stanchions

The wall bracket or stanchion must be 4 inches by approximately 1-1/2 inch by 3/16 inch channel steel, or 4 inches by approximately 1 inch glass-reinforced nylon with recessed bolt mounting holes, 48 inches long (minimum) in manholes. Slots for mounting cable rack arms must be spaced at 8 inch intervals.

##### 2.6.2 Rack Arms

Cable rack arms must be steel or malleable iron or glass reinforced nylon and must be of the removable type. Rack arm length must be a minimum of 8 inches and a maximum of 12 inches.

##### 2.6.3 Insulators

Insulators for metal rack arms must be dry-process glazed porcelain. Insulators are not required for nylon arms.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

Install equipment and devices in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and with the requirements and recommendations of NFPA 70 and IEEE C2 as applicable. In addition to these requirements, install telecommunications in accordance with TIA-758 and RUS Bull 1751F-644.

#### 3.2 UNDERGROUND FEEDERS SUPPLYING BUILDINGS

Terminate underground feeders supplying building at a point 5 feet outside the building and projections thereof, except that conductors must be continuous to the terminating point indicated. Provide PVC, Type EPC-40 RGS conduit from the supply equipment to a point 5 feet outside the building and projections thereof. Protect ends of underground conduit with plastic plugs until connections are made.

Encase the underground portion of the conduit in a concrete envelope and bury as specified for underground duct with concrete encasement.

#### 3.3 UNDERGROUND STRUCTURE CONSTRUCTION

Provide standard type cast-in-place construction as specified herein and as indicated, or precast construction as specified herein. Horizontal concrete surfaces of floors must have a smooth trowel finish. Cure concrete by applying two coats of white pigmented membrane forming-curing compound in strict accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions,

except that precast concrete may be steam cured. Curing compound must conform to [ASTM C309](#). Locate duct entrances and windows in the center of end walls (shorter) and near the corners of sidewalls (longer) to facilitate cable racking and splicing. Covers for underground structures must fit the frames without undue play. Steel and iron must be formed to shape and size with sharp lines and angles. Castings must be free from warp and blow holes that may impair strength or appearance. Exposed metal must have a smooth finish and sharp lines and arises. Provide necessary lugs, rabbets, and brackets. Set pulling-in irons and other built-in items in place before depositing concrete. Manhole locations, as indicated, are approximate. Coordinate exact manhole locations with other utilities and finished grading and paving.

### 3.3.1 Cast-In-Place Concrete Structures

Construct walls on a footing of cast-in-place concrete except that precast concrete base sections may be used for precast concrete manhole risers. Concrete block is not allowed in areas subject to aircraft loading.

### 3.3.2 Precast Concrete Construction

Set commercial precast structures on [6 inches](#) of level, 90 percent compacted granular fill, [3/4 inch to 1 inch](#) size, extending [12 inches](#) beyond the structure on each side. Compact granular fill by a minimum of four passes with a plate type vibrator. Installation must additionally conform to the manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.3.3 Pulling-In Irons

Provide steel bars bent as indicated, and cast in the walls and floors. Alternatively, pipe sleeves may be precast into the walls and floors where required to accept U-bolts or other types of pulling-in devices possessing the strengths and clearances stated herein. The final installation of pulling-in devices must be made permanent. Cover and seal exterior projections of thru-wall type pulling-in devices with an appropriate protective coating. In the floor the irons must be a minimum of [6 inches](#) from the edge of the sump, and in the walls the irons must be located within [6 inches](#) of the projected center of the duct bank pattern or precast window in the opposite wall. However, the pulling-in iron must not be located within [6 inches](#) of an adjacent interior surface, or duct or precast window located within the same wall as the iron. If a pulling-in iron cannot be located directly opposite the corresponding duct bank or precast window due to this clearance limitation, locate the iron directly above or below the projected center of the duct bank pattern or precast window the minimum distance required to preserve the [6 inch](#) clearance previously stated. In the case of directly opposing precast windows, pulling-in irons consisting of a [3 foot](#) length of No. 5 reinforcing bar, formed into a hairpin, may be cast-in-place within the precast windows simultaneously with the end of the corresponding duct bank envelope. Irons installed in this manner must be positioned directly in line with, or when not possible, directly above or below the projected center of the duct bank pattern entering the opposite wall, while maintaining a minimum clear distance of [3 inches](#) from any edge of the cast-in-place duct bank envelope or any individual duct. Pulling-in irons must have a clear projection into the structure of approximately [4 inches](#) and must be designed to withstand a minimum pulling-in load of [6000 pounds](#). Irons must be hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication.

### 3.3.4 Cable Racks, Arms and Insulators

Cable racks, arms and insulators must be sufficient to accommodate the cables. Space racks in power manholes not more than 3 feet apart, and provide each manhole wall with a minimum of two racks. Space racks in signal manholes not more than 16 1/2 inches apart with the end rack being no further than 12 inches from the adjacent wall. Methods of anchoring cable racks must be as follows:

- a. Provide a 5/8 inch diameter by 5 inch long anchor bolt with 3 inch foot cast in structure wall with 2 inch protrusion of threaded portion of bolt into structure. Provide 5/8 inch steel square head nut on each anchor bolt. Coat threads of anchor bolts with suitable coating immediately prior to installing nuts.
- b. Provide concrete channel insert with a minimum load rating of 800 pounds per foot. Insert channel must be steel of the same length as "vertical rack channel;" channel insert must be cast flush in structure wall. Provide 5/8 inch steel nuts in channel insert to receive 5/8 inch diameter by 3 inch long steel, square head anchor bolts.
- c. Provide concrete "spot insert" at each anchor bolt location, cast flush in structure wall. Each insert must have minimum 800 pound load rating. Provide 5/8 inch diameter by 3 inch long steel, square head anchor bolt at each anchor point. Coat threads of anchor bolts with suitable coating immediately prior to installing bolts.

### 3.3.5 Field Painting

Cast-iron frames and covers not buried in concrete or masonry must be cleaned of mortar, rust, grease, dirt and other deleterious materials, and given a coat of bituminous paint.

## 3.4 UNDERGROUND CONDUIT AND DUCT SYSTEMS

### 3.4.1 Requirements

Run conduit in straight lines except where a change of direction is necessary. Provide numbers and sizes of ducts as indicated. Bond bare copper grounding conductor to ground rings (loops) in all manholes and to ground rings (loops) at all equipment slabs (pads). Route grounding conductor into manholes with the duct bank (sleeving is not required). Ducts must have a continuous slope downward toward underground structures and away from buildings, laid with a minimum slope of 4 inches per 100 feet. Depending on the contour of the finished grade, the high-point may be at a terminal, a manhole, a handhole, or between manholes or handholes. Provide ducts with end bells whenever duct lines terminate in structures.

Perform changes in ductbank direction as follows:

- a. Short-radius manufactured 90-degree duct bends may be used only for pole or equipment risers, unless specifically indicated as acceptable.
- b. The minimum manufactured bend radius must be 36 inches for ducts 3 inches or greater in diameter.
- c. As an exception to the bend radius required above, provide field manufactured longsweep bends having a minimum radius of 25 feet for a change of direction of more than 5 degrees, either horizontally or

vertically, using a combination of curved and straight sections.  
Maximum manufactured curved sections: 30 degrees.

#### 3.4.2 Treatment

Ducts must be kept clean of concrete, dirt, or foreign substances during construction. Field cuts requiring tapers must be made with proper tools and match factory tapers. A coupling recommended by the duct manufacturer must be used whenever an existing duct is connected to a duct of different material or shape. Ducts must be stored to avoid warping and deterioration with ends sufficiently plugged to prevent entry of any water or solid substances. Ducts must be thoroughly cleaned before being laid. Plastic ducts must be stored on a flat surface and protected from the direct rays of the sun.

#### 3.4.3 Conduit Cleaning

As each conduit run is completed, for conduit sizes 3 inches and larger, draw a flexible testing mandrel approximately 12 inches long with a diameter less than the inside diameter of the conduit through the conduit. After which, draw a stiff bristle brush through until conduit is clear of particles of earth, sand and gravel; then immediately install conduit plugs. For conduit sizes less than 3 inches, draw a stiff bristle brush through until conduit is clear of particles of earth, sand and gravel; then immediately install conduit plugs.

#### 3.4.4 Galvanized Conduit Concrete Penetrations

Galvanized conduits which penetrate concrete (slabs, pavement, and walls) in wet locations must be PVC coated and must extend from at least 2 inches within the concrete to the first coupling or fitting outside the concrete (minimum of 6 inches from penetration).

#### 3.4.5 Multiple Conduits

Separate multiple conduits by a minimum distance of 3 inches, except that telephone conduits by a minimum distance of 12 inches. Stagger the joints of the conduits by rows (horizontally) and layers (vertically) to strengthen the conduit assembly. Provide plastic duct spacers that interlock vertically and horizontally. Spacer assembly must consist of base spacers, intermediate spacers, ties, and locking device on top to provide a completely enclosed and locked-in conduit assembly. Install spacers per manufacturer's instructions, but provide a minimum of two spacer assemblies per 10 feet of conduit assembly.

#### 3.4.6 Conduit Plugs and Pull Rope

New conduit indicated as being unused or empty must be provided with plugs on each end. Plugs must contain a weephole or screen to allow water drainage. Provide a plastic pull rope having 3 feet of slack at each end of unused or empty conduits.

#### 3.4.7 Encasement Under Roads and Structures

Under roads, paved areas, and railroad tracks, install conduits in concrete encasement of rectangular cross-section providing a minimum of 3 inch concrete cover around ducts. Concrete encasement must extend at least 5 feet beyond the edges of paved areas and roads, and 12 feet beyond the rails on each side of railroad tracks. Depths to top of the concrete

envelope must be not less than 24 inches below finished grade.

#### 3.4.8 Duct Encased in Concrete

Construct underground duct lines of individual conduits encased in concrete. Depths to top of the concrete envelope must be not less than 18 inches below finished grade, except under roads and pavement, concrete envelope must be not less than 24 inches below finished grade. Do not mix different kinds of conduit in any one duct bank. Concrete encasement surrounding the bank must be rectangular in cross-section and must provide at least 3 inches of concrete cover for ducts. Separate conduits by a minimum concrete thickness of 3 inches. Before pouring concrete, anchor duct bank assemblies to prevent the assemblies from floating during concrete pouring. Anchoring must be done by driving reinforcing rods adjacent to duct spacer assemblies and attaching the rods to the spacer assembly. Provide steel reinforcing in the concrete envelope as indicated.

Provide color, type and depth of warning tape as specified in Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK.

##### 3.4.8.1 Connections to Manholes

Duct bank envelopes connecting to underground structures must be flared to have enlarged cross-section at the manhole entrance to provide additional shear strength. Dimensions of the flared cross-section must be larger than the corresponding manhole opening dimensions by no less than 12 inches in each direction. Perimeter of the duct bank opening in the underground structure must be flared toward the inside or keyed to provide a positive interlock between the duct bank and the wall of the structure. Use vibrators when this portion of the encasement is poured to assure a seal between the envelope and the wall of the structure.

##### 3.4.8.2 Connections to Existing Underground Structures

For duct bank connections to existing structures, break the structure wall out to the dimensions required and preserve steel in the structure wall. Cut steel and extend into the duct bank envelope. Chip the perimeter surface of the duct bank opening to form a key or flared surface, providing a positive connection with the duct bank envelope.

##### 3.4.8.3 Connections to Existing Concrete Pads

For duct bank connections to concrete pads, break an opening in the pad out to the dimensions required and preserve steel in pad. Cut the steel and extend into the duct bank envelope. Chip out the opening in the pad to form a key for the duct bank envelope.

##### 3.4.8.4 Connections to Existing Ducts

Where connections to existing duct banks are indicated, excavate the banks to the maximum depth necessary. Cut off the banks and remove loose concrete from the conduits before new concrete-encased ducts are installed. Provide a reinforced concrete collar, poured monolithically with the new duct bank, to take the shear at the joint of the duct banks. Remove existing cables which constitute interference with the work.

##### 3.4.8.5 Partially Completed Duct Banks

During construction wherever a construction joint is necessary in a duct bank, prevent debris such as mud, and, and dirt from entering ducts by

providing suitable conduit plugs. Fit concrete envelope of a partially completed duct bank with reinforcing steel extending a minimum of **2 feet** back into the envelope and a minimum of **2 feet** beyond the end of the envelope. Provide one No. 4 bar in each corner, **3 inches** from the edge of the envelope. Secure corner bars with two No. 3 ties, spaced approximately **one foot** apart. Restrain reinforcing assembly from moving during concrete pouring.

#### 3.4.8.6 Removal of Ducts

Where duct lines are removed from existing underground structures, close the openings to waterproof the structure. Chip out the wall opening to provide a key for the new section of wall.

#### 3.4.9 Duct Sealing

Seal all electrical penetrations for radon mitigation, maintaining integrity of the vapor barrier, and to prevent infiltration of air, insects, and vermin.

### 3.5 GROUNDING SYSTEMS

**NFPA 70** and **IEEE C2**, except provide grounding systems with a resistance to solid earth ground not exceeding 25 ohms.

#### 3.5.1 Grounding Electrodes

Provide cone pointed driven ground rods driven full depth plus **12 inches**, installed to provide an earth ground of the appropriate value for the particular equipment being grounded.

If the specified ground resistance is not met, an additional ground rod must be provided in accordance with the requirements of **NFPA 70** (placed not less than 6 feet from the first rod). Should the resultant (combined) resistance exceed the specified resistance, measured not less than 48 hours after rainfall, notify the Contracting Officer immediately.

#### 3.5.2 Grounding Connections

Make grounding connections which are buried or otherwise normally inaccessible, by exothermic weld or compression connector.

- a. Make exothermic welds strictly in accordance with the weld manufacturer's written recommendations. Welds which are "puffed up" or which show convex surfaces indicating improper cleaning are not acceptable. Mechanical connectors are not required at exothermic welds.
- b. Make compression connections using a hydraulic compression tool to provide the correct circumferential pressure. Tools and dies must be as recommended by the manufacturer. An embossing die code or other standard method must provide visible indication that a connector has been adequately compressed on the ground wire.

#### 3.5.3 Grounding Conductors

Provide bare grounding conductors, except where installed in conduit with associated phase conductors. Ground cable sheaths, cable shields, conduit, and equipment with No. 6 AWG. Ground other noncurrent-carrying metal parts and equipment frames of metal-enclosed equipment. Ground metallic frames and covers of handholes and pull boxes with a braided, copper ground strap

with equivalent ampacity of No. 6 AWG. Provide direct connections to the grounding conductor with 600 v insulated, full-size conductor for each grounded neutral of each feeder circuit, which is spliced within the manhole.

#### 3.5.4 Ground Cable Crossing Expansion Joints

Protect ground cables crossing expansion joints or similar separations in structures and pavements by use of approved devices or methods of installation which provide the necessary slack in the cable across the joint to permit movement. Use stranded or other approved flexible copper cable across such separations.

#### 3.5.5 Manhole Grounding

Loop a 4/0 AWG grounding conductor around the interior perimeter, approximately 12 inches above finished floor. Secure the conductor to the manhole walls at intervals not exceeding 36 inches. Connect the conductor to the manhole grounding electrode with 4/0 AWG conductor. Connect all incoming 4/0 grounding conductors to the ground loop adjacent to the point of entry into the manhole. Bond the ground loop to all cable shields, metal cable racks, and other metal equipment with a minimum 6 AWG conductor.

### 3.6 EXCAVATING, BACKFILLING, AND COMPACTING

Provide in accordance with NFPA 70 and Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK.

#### 3.6.1 Reconditioning of Surfaces

##### 3.6.1.1 Unpaved Surfaces

Restore to their original elevation and condition unpaved surfaces disturbed during installation of duct or direct burial cable. Preserve sod and topsoil removed during excavation and reinstall after backfilling is completed. Replace sod that is damaged by sod of quality equal to that removed. When the surface is disturbed in a newly seeded area, re-seed the restored surface with the same quantity and formula of seed as that used in the original seeding, and provide topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, or mulching. Provide work in accordance with Section 32 92 19 SEEDING.

##### 3.6.1.2 Paving Repairs

Where trenches, pits, or other excavations are made in existing roadways and other areas of pavement where surface treatment of any kind exists restore such surface treatment or pavement the same thickness and in the same kind as previously existed, except as otherwise specified, and to match and tie into the adjacent and surrounding existing surfaces.

### 3.7 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

Provide concrete in accordance with Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

#### 3.7.1 Concrete Slabs (Pads) for Equipment

Unless otherwise indicated, the slab must be at least 8 inches thick, reinforced with a 6 by 6 - W2.9 by W2.9 mesh, placed uniformly 4 inches from the top of the slab. Slab must be placed on a 6 inch thick, well-compacted gravel base. Top of concrete slab must be approximately 4

inches above finished grade with gradual slope for drainage. Edges above grade must have 1/2 inch chamfer. Slab must be of adequate size to project at least 8 inches beyond the equipment.

Stub up conduits, with bushings, 2 inches into cable wells in the concrete pad. Coordinate dimensions of cable wells with transformer cable training areas.

### 3.7.2 Sealing

When the installation is complete, seal all conduit and other entries into the equipment enclosure with an approved sealing compound. Seals must be of sufficient strength and durability to protect all energized live parts of the equipment from rodents, insects, or other foreign matter.

## 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

### 3.8.1 Performance of Field Acceptance Checks and Tests

Perform in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and include the following visual and mechanical inspections and electrical tests, performed in accordance with NETA ATS.

#### 3.8.1.1 Grounding System

##### a. Visual and mechanical inspection

Inspect ground system for compliance with contract plans and specifications.

##### b. Electrical tests

Perform ground-impedance measurements utilizing the fall-of-potential method in accordance with IEEE 81. On systems consisting of interconnected ground rods, perform tests after interconnections are complete. On systems consisting of a single ground rod perform tests before any wire is connected. Take measurements in normally dry weather, not less than 48 hours after rainfall. Use a portable ground resistance tester in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to test each ground or group of grounds. The instrument must be equipped with a meter reading directly in ohms or fractions thereof to indicate the ground value of the ground rod or grounding systems under test. Provide site diagram indicating location of test probes with associated distances, and provide a plot of resistance vs. distance.

### 3.8.2 Follow-Up Verification

Upon completion of acceptance checks and tests, show by demonstration in service that circuits and devices are in good operating condition and properly performing the intended function. As an exception to requirements stated elsewhere in the contract, the Contracting Officer must be given 5 working days advance notice of the dates and times of checking and testing.

.... -- End of Section --







HDR Engineering, Inc. of the Carolinas  
440 S Church Street, Suite 1000  
Charlotte, NC 28202-2075  
704.338.6700  
NC License F0116

**[hdrinc.com](http://hdrinc.com)**

© 2022 HDR, Inc., all rights reserved